

# CONNECT Plus







# Contents

	Part 1	
	Unit All around the world	Page 4
<b>6</b>	Test 1	42
in the second	Unit 8 Customs and traditions	45
<b>2</b> 5	Test 2	83
Ĕ	Unit 9 Our culture	86
	Test 3	119

Unit 10 Connecting the world	Page 122
Test 4	158
Unit 11 On the road!	161
Test 5	195
(Initial) A global challenge	198
Test 6	222

Una responsible person

Part 2	Page
Non-Fiction Reader: Shipwrecks	225
Fiction Reader: Amir takes action	223)

Part 3	Page
Listening Scripts	246

Theme (3) My society

curriculum topics



All around the world حول العالم

Kaieteur Falls, Guyana

### In this unit I will ....

- understand environments around the world.
- learn about renewable and non-renewable energy.
- form and use the present continuous.
- read about different energy sources.
- understand the meaning of words in context.
- compare and order high numbers.
- talk about how to help the environment.
- make a competition entry to improve our environment.

	Objectives				
	Environments around the world: coastal, desert, mountainous, polar rainforest, rural, urban A clean world: air pollution, carbon dioxide, climate change, emissions fuel, water pollution Renewable and non-renewable energy: generate, geothermal energy, hydroelectricity, kilowatt, solar energy, store, tidal energy, tide, waterwheels, wind turbines				
Language	- Today we're talking about pollution What are we doing to stop it? - Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels Context as clue to the meaning of a new word or phrase				
Reading	Descriptions of environments; a scientific report about energy sources: a text about how our environment allows different energy sources				
Writing	A report about hydroelectricity at the High Dam				
Speaking	Talking about changes we can make to help the planet				
Listening	A podcast about ways to reduce pollution; a conversation about how to help the environment				
Life skills	Problem solving, accountability: the importance of helping the environment				
Values	Appreciation of science Respect for the environment				
issues and challenges	Environmental responsibility.				
Integrated cross-	Math: comparis				

Math: comparing and ordering high numbers

## Lesson 1 Our world



## الكلمات الأساسية مُن الدرس Main Vocabulary



environments بيئات



coastal ساحلية



mountainous حىلية



polar قطبية



rural



urban مدنية - خَضْرية



desert صحراوية



rainforest غابة مطيرة

## Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافية

places	أماكن	sparsely populated	مُليلة السكان
temperature	درجة الحرارة	densely populated	كثيفة السكان
weather	طمّس	continent	غارة
the Arctic	القطب الشمالي	metropolitan area قة حضرية	منطقة العاصمة - منطة
the Antarctic	القطب الجنوبي	- 444	ا المرور - الازدحام المرور

forest	غايد reptiles	زواحف
swamps	mammals مستنفعات	اللدييات
land	insects أرض	حشرات
special ways	survive طرق خاصة	يبقى على قيد الحياة

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs قمكتنظمة

D	resent	Past	Pre	sent	Past
	يتعلم	learned (learnt)	look	ينظر	looked
learn	يُكُوْن - يُشَكِّل	formed	check	يفحص - يتفقّد	checked
form	يُرْأَب - يامر - يطن	ordered	use عمل	پستخدم - یسا	Used
talk	يتحدث - يتكلم		compare	يقارن	compared
help	2clm!	helped	improve	يُحسُن - يُطَوِّر	improved
visit	يزور	visited	describe	يَصِف	described
COVEL	يَعْطُمِ	covered	live	يعيش	lived
listen	يستمع	listened	survive	ينجو	survived
rain	ئمطِر	rained	change	يُغَيِّر - يتغيِّر	changed
travel	يسافر	traveled	breathe	يتنفس	breathed

### الأفعال غير المنتظمة Irregular verbs

Pr	esent	Past	Pre	sent	Past
read	يقرا	read	can	يستطيع	could
understa	يفهم and	understood	find	يَجِد	found
make	بصنع - يجعل	made	write	يكتب	wrote
see	unji	saw	get	يحصل على	got
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	choose	يختار	chose
do	يفعل	did		يضطر أن-يجب	had to
	Did	Voll know			هل تعلم؟

## Did you know?

The Amazon covers 40% of South America and is the world's largest rainforest. The second largest is the Congo in Africa.

لفط<sup>ي</sup> غابات الأمازون حوالي 40٪ من مَارة أمريكا الجنوبية، وهي أكبر غابة العاسم مطيرة في العالم، وثاني أكبر غابة مطيرة في العالم هي غابة الكونغو في أفريقيا. مطيرة في العالم، وثاني أكبر غابة مطيرة في العالم هي غابة الكونغو في أفريقيا.

## Did you know?

مل تعلم؟

It is harder to get enough oxygen when you breathe at the top of a high mountain. If you aren't used to being in the mountains, it can make you sick!

من الصعب أن تحصل عل**م أكسجين كافٍ عندما تتنفس علم قمة جبلٍ عالٍ.** إذا لم تكن معتادًا عل**م التواجدُ علم الجبال، فمن الممكن أن تمرض**اً



Read and learn

## There are different environments in our world



### 1. Rainforest environment

There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers here. Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles 0, and mammals 0. It often rains and the temperature 0 is hot.



### 2. Coastal environment

This environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps of and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.



### 3. Desert environment

It is very dry in this environment. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to survive without a lot of water. You can find these environments on every continent and they can be hot or cold.



### 4. Rural environment

There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.



👩 (يَمْمَ عَلَمُ مُرِدُ الحَيَاةُ 🐧 (فَأَزَفٌ) 🔞 (فَلَيْنَةُ السَّكَانَ)



## 5. Polar environment

There are two of these environments in the world: the Arctice and the Antarctice. It is cold and windy here, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live here, but there aren't any trees or flowers.



### 6. Urban environment

This is a metropolitan area which is densely populated o. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.



### 7. Mountainous environment

It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the weather can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to survive.



🛈 مُنظمُة العاصمة 🕦 كَلْيَفَةَ السَّكَانَ 👂 طَرِقَ خَاصَةً

## Exercises on Lesson (1)



## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sparsely - densely - buildings - metropolitan

The urban environment is a 

populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment.

There are lots of 

area. It is 

area. It



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Arctic - survive - continent - environment

It is very dry in this 
. The animals and plants that live here have to find clever ways to 
without a lot of water.

You can find these environments on every 
and they can be hot or cold.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

## coastal - desert - environments - urban

Ehab : What are you doing, Fady?

Fady : I'm reading a book about different 0

Ehab : What's your favorite environment?

Fady : The @ ..... environment.

Ehab : Why?

Fady : Because there are lots of buildings, clubs, parks and other

interesting places. What about you?

Ehab : I like the 6 ..... environment.

Fady : Why?

Ehab : Because I like living next to the sea.

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

- Lots of trees, plants, flowers and animals live in the (urban polar rainforest) environment.
- 2. The (rural mountainous desert) environment is a very high environment.
- 3. In the (coastal rainforest desert) environment, the land is next to the sea.

### Unit 7

- Unit /
  4. In the (urban rural polar) environment, there are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too. 5. It's very dry in the (rural - polar - desert) environment.
- 5. It's very dry in the (rural polar) environment often has a lot of animal
- 6. The Arctic and the Antarctic and the Antarcti
- 6. Africa is the (country continent city) where we live.
- 9. The desert environment is (sparsely populated densely populated . [4]
- 10. There are (traffic ice swamps) in the coastal environments.
- 11. Lots of animals have to find clever ways to (die run survive) in the polar and desert environments.
- 12. Cairo is a (sparsely populated densely populated not populated) city

## Read the following text and answer the questions below:

There are lots of trees, plants, and flowers in the rainforest environment Lots of animals live in these places. For example, there are insects, birds, reptiles, and mammals. It often rains and the temperature is hot. The coastal environment is where the land is next to the sea. In some places there are beaches with sand, and sometimes there are swamps and forests. The Nile Delta is an example, and so is the Red Sea.

## Choose the correct answer:

- Sometimes there are beaches with sand in the (rainforest polar coastal) environment.
- 2. Trees, plants and flowers grow when there's a lot of (rain wind storm)
- Answer these questions:
- 3. Where can we find the coastal environment?
- 4. What's the weather like in the rainforest environment?

10

- 6 Order the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. environment often It rainforest rains in the.
- 2. is The populated rural sparsely environment.
- 3. environment do in What live you?
- 4. in very It is desert dry the.
- 5. be Deserts hot can cold or.
- 6. urban densely The is populated environment.
- Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

## "My environment"

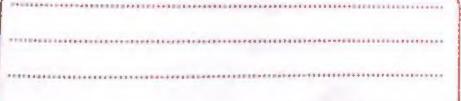
### Ideas to help you:

- What kind of environment do you live in?
- What are the good and bad things about it?
- What kind of plants and animals are there in your environment?













## Language

## الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





water pollution ثلؤن المياه



air pollution تُلُوْثُ الهواء



(CO<sub>1</sub>) كسيد الكربون (CO<sub>1</sub>) يسيد الكربون





climate change نَغَيْر المناخ



emissions تبعاثات



fuel

وقود

## Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

gas	jić¦heat (n)	åk:
atmosphere	power الغَلَافَ الْجُوبِ - الْجُوْ	ögå · til
chemicals	factories موادكيميائية	p/is
forest fires	volcanic eruptio حزائق الغابات رکانیة	ns پار خاناروئ - قوناخار براز
dangerous	ecientists خطیر	, id
dirty	article أُمَدَر - مُلَوْث	الم ممال
burn	क्षेत्र्य podcast	<sup>ور موتې</sup> - بث صوتي
cause (v)	प्रांमम् a long period of	
12)———		Step Mid

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verba restrictification

- Continue		- Cupy	C (a)		Past
disappear	تجتوت	disappeared		، چارت يُدُرق - بحترق - ر	
wait	ينتظر	waited	stop	يتومُف ، يُومِف	stopped
discover	يكتشف	discovered	try	يحاول	tried
collect	يجمع	collected	cause	يُشلِب	caused
pick up سبب	يالقط - يُم	picked up	complete	 يُكْمِل - يستكمل	completed

## الانتخال عير الفائطمة معناه الانتخال عير الفائطمة

	स्वार्	(ds)	A CO	resem	Pāš
put	يضع	put	wear	يرتدي - پلېس	wore
drive	يقود (مُرْكَبُهُ)	drove	ride	يركب	rode
throw در سن شریع	away يرمى شيئًا - يتخلد	threw away	leave	يترك - يغادر	left

## Definitions Property S B Students

water pollution: when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic

: when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick air pollution

carbon dioxide: a gas in the atmosphere known as CO2. It can be dangerous

when there is too much in the air

: these are made, for example, by factories, cars and lorries; emissions

they can cause air pollution

climate change : when the weather and temperature change over a long

period of time

this is something we burn to make heat or power fuel

## Listenina

Woman 1: Hello, and welcome to our Clean World podcast of We live in an amazing world, but the things that people do can damage 🥹 environment 0.

> Today we're talking about pollution - what is it, and what are we doing to stop it?

Woman 2: There are two main types of pollution -

air pollution o and water pollution o. Air

pollution is caused by the things that

people do, such as driving cars and

When we burn fuels, it makes carbon

dioxide emissions . Over a long time, this

can lead to o climate change, because

there is too much carbon dioxide in the

atmosphere . Things in the natural

world, such as forest fires, or volcanic

eruptions ®, can also cause air pollution.

trucks, or making things in factories o.



(Algority ()

و بُلُون - يُذَمِّر ،

dul ()

🚯 تُلُونُ الْهُولَـــُا

﴿ ثَلُوْتُ الْمِياةُ

Pino 6

التعاثات تاتس أكسيد الكربون

🔞 يقود إلى

(6) الحق- القلاق الجوب

الفجارات بركانية

🛈 اقمامة بلاسكتيكيّة

الله يُقلل

ובל סון

Chemicals from factories or farms go into rivers or the sea to cause water pollution. There is also a problem with plastic pollution - there's a lot of plastic garbage o in rivers and oceans, and this is very bad for the animals that live there.

Woman 1

: Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to reduce o it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation instead of a using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a cleaner place!

### Did you know?

هل سلارا

A plastic bottle can be in the sea for over 400 years before it disappears. It's important to recycle plastic, not throw it away!

بمكن للرجاحة البلاستيكية أن تبقما في البحر لأكثر من 400 عام، قبل أن تختفي. لذا فمن المهم أن نعيد تدوير البلاستيك بدلاً من رميه.

## Grammar Study 🛣

The present continuous tense إلمن المضارع المستمر (Negativi النتي Interroge



Form:



am - is - are) + (v) فعل + Ing





- ▶ Today, we're talking about pollution.
- We use it to express an action that's happening now.
  - 🖷 يُستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.
- Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels.
- We sometimes use some words with present continuous.

أحيانًا ما تُستخدم كلمات معينة مع المضارع المستمر مثل:

Now

at the moment
الآن - في الوفي الحالي

right now

Listen
الآن - حاليًا today

الآن - حاليًا today

Connect Plus 4

15

### Unit 7

- I'm reading English now
- Look! He's running to school
- When verbs end in a single (a), omit the (e) letter before adding (ing).

مند إضافة (ing) إلى فعل منتهِ بـ (e)، تُخدف الـ (e) قبل إضافة الـ (ing)،

have - hav	ing write -	writing con	ne →	coming
make → ma	king ride -	riding driv	re →	driving
wave - wal	ving wake -	waking shir	ne →	shining

- When verbs end in a consonant after a vowel, double the last consonant before adding (ing).
  - عندما يكون الفعل منتهيًا بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك قوي في النطق،
     نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة الـ (ing).

- In the negative form, we add (not) after (am is are).
  - 🛢 عند النغي نضيف (not) بعد (am is are).
  - ► He isn't driving an electric car. He's driving a gas car.
- in the interrogative form, we use (am is are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (v + ing).
  - عند عمل سؤال على المضارع المستمر، نبدأ السؤال بـ (am is are) أو نضع إحداها

بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع (ng) + الفعل)،

- O Are you reading now?
- O is she listening to a podcast?
- O What are you doing now?
- O What's Hani doing?

- Yes, I am.
- No, she isn't.
- I'm learning English.
- He's reading an article.

## Exercises on Lesson (2)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

reading - wearing - putting - picking

My name is Soha. I am on the beach today. I can see many people here. They are helping to stop pollution. They are ① ...... up the garbage. The garbage can be dirty, so they are ② gloves. They are ⑤ the plastic bottles in bags so they don't go into the sea.

## Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)

- (Water pollution Air pollution Climate change) happens when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic.
- (Carbon dioxide Oxygen Hydrogen) is a gas in the atmosphere known as CO<sub>2</sub>.
- (Air pollution Climate change Water pollution) happens when the weather and temperature change over a long period of time.
- 4. (Fuel Pollution Factories) is something we burn to make heat or power.
- (Volcanic eruption Air poliution Water pollution) happens when the air is dirty. It can make people or animals sick.
- They are (using writing cleaning) the beach because it is full of plastic bottles.
- 7.1 like (walking listening watching) to podcasts.

## Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

- 1.1 (am is are) eating my breakfast.
- 2. Aya (am is are) helping her mom.
- 3. They (am is are) playing computer games.
- 4. He (am is are) drawing a picture of a clean environment.

### Unit 7

- 5. We (am is are) washing our dad's car
- 6. Look, the cat (am is are) playing with the baby.
- 7. Today, we're (talk talked talking) about pollution.
- 8. What (happened is happening happen) now?
- 9. Lots of people are (trying tried try) to make our world a cleaner place
- 10. What (has is does) she doing?
- 11. Look, that boy (is throwing threw throws) away garbage in the street
- 12. Scientists are (found find finding) new ways to travel and to use fuels.
- 13. Listen, mom (called calls is calling).
- 14. What are you (do doing does), Ahmed?
- 15. (Are Have Do) they watching the match now?
- 16. It (is raining rains rained) at the moment.

## Write sentences in the present continuous:



- 1. I walk to school
- 2. He wait for the bus
- 3. i use recycled plastic
- 4. We learn about climate change
  - • • earn about cirriate change
- 5. They drive an electric car
- 6. Hana watch a TV program
- 7. I read an article about the environment
- 8. Tarek listen to a podcast

## Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. fuel - We - heat - make - to - burn.

dangerous - be - Carbon - can - dioxide. 0 15 40 TANDESCALED CONTROL STATE OF THE TANDESCALE OF TANDESCAL

3. today - Sarah - walking - school - to - is. 

4. TV - watching - Hana - program - is - a. 

5. bus - for - Adel - the - waiting - is..

6. doing - you - now - are - What?

7. bags - She - collecting - is - plastic.

8. she - a - podcast - Is - listening - to?

## Write an email of (40) words to your friend Manar:

Tell her about the podcast you listened to yesterday. It was about pollution. Tell her how air pollution is dangerous, what causes air pollution, and how we can solve this problem. Your email address is malak@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is manar@school.com.

From To

Subject





20

## Extra:Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	electricity	كهرباء
sources	مصادر	tide	المد والجذر
Earth	الكرة الأرضية	remains	بقايا
ground	أرض	movement	عركة
generate	يولد	is released	يُطلق - يُبَث
store	يخزن	close to	يالقرب من
run out	ينفذ	on the long run	على المدى البعيد

## Definitions @ SB Students

turbine : a machine to make energy

generate : to make energy

store (v) : to keep something for a period of time

tide : when the level of the sea gets higher or lower

## sonjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs achical illevill

113.5			Presen		Past
remain	يبقى - يظل	remained	generate	يُولُد	generated
heat	يُسَكِن	heated	store	نِخْلُن	stored
need	يحتاج	needed	decide	يُمْزر	decided
guess	يَخَمُن	guessed	ول (شربء) circle	يضع دائرة ح	circled
release	يُطْلِق - يُصْدِر	released	create	ئلشئ	created

# الأفعال فيزر المنتظمة - Irregular verbs

			Prese		Past
run out	sent	ran out	لمظ به keep	يُبقي - يد	kept
	بتود - ببتهن		come from	يأتي مل	came from
go up	يرتفع - يعلو	went down	find	تخد	found
go down	يلخفض	Wellt down			

Sometimes when we read a text, we find words which we don't understand. Look at the rest of the words in the sentence carefully. Can they help you understand the new words?

أطأنًا عندما نقرأ نص ، نجد كلمات لانفهمها. انظر إلى بقية الكلمات في الجملة بعناية. هل يمكن أن يساعدوك في فهم الكلمات الجديدة؟

Look at how a new word is used in a sentence and decide if it is a verb or a noun. This helps you guess the meaning of new words.

أنظر إلى كيفية استخدام الكلمة الجديدة في الجملة وحدد ما إذا كانت فعل أواسم، سوف يساعدك هذا أن تخمن معنى الكلمات الجديدة.



### Read and learn-

### Energy around us



Fossil fuels oare things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable e: when they run out e, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains o See B of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released o an all of the second of into the atmosphere.



22

- Step Ahead

There are other kinds of energy we can use which are renewable o: they don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources@such as the wind, the sun, مالكمالكمة المعالية المناطقة على المناطقة ال water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run o, they are better. There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energyofrom the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity . A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places

6333107 (6

(قطأدر طبيعية

(الطاقة)الأنمسية

🐞 (آلواج شمسیم)

THE PARTY IN

D CLOSE CHARLE

ال كافقا مواد

(S) (B)

have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide . In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy . from the moving water to make electricity. Wind and wave turbines work by movement . The wind or water make turbines move, and this moving energy generates electrical energy. You can store this energy, so if the sun isn't shining or the wind isn't blowing, we will still have electricity. In other places, it is very hot under the ground. These are good places for geothermal energy, as the ground can heat water.

In the future, we need to get more of our energy from renewable sources, and less from non-renewable sources.



## (Exercises on Lesson (3)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### burned - remains - coal - fuels

are things like coal, gas and oil. These are are are an in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable: when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago.

## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### solar - tidal - Renewable - fossil

When we burn 

..... fuels like coal, gas, and oil, carbon dioxide goes out into the atmosphere. This causes air pollution and make climate change worse.

.... energy from natural resources is better for the environment and it won't run out. Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they can create

energy using the movement of the sea.

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Coal, gas and oil are (renewable energy solar energy fossil fuels).
- 2. The (renewable non-renewable) energy will run out one day.
- 3. A hot desert is a good place to get (tidal wind solar) energy.
- 4. The renewable energy doesn't make (electricity pollution power).
- When we burn fossil fuels, a lot of carbon dioxide is (released decided - worked) into the atmosphere.



- We can get (tidal energy solar energy wind energy) from moving water.
- 7. The sun, wind and water are natural (turbines fuels resources).
- 8. We get (geothermal solar wind) energy from the heat under the ground.
- 9. The wind energy is a (renewable non-renewable) energy.
- When there's a lot of wind, we can get (wave power wind energy solar energy).
- 11. A turbine is a (source of energy machine to make energy).
- (3.0)

12. To generate is to (make - use) energy.

- AD
- 13. In some places, the sea goes (up and down right and left) throughout the day. This is called a tide.



- 14. To store is to (make keep) something for a period of time.
- AB
- 15. A tide is when (the level of the sea gets higher or lower the sea gets hotter or colder).

## Read the following text and answer the questions below:

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot desert is a good place to get solar energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast. In some places, the sea goes up and down throughout the day. This is called a tide. In places where the tides are very big and strong, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity.

## A

### Choose the correct answer:

- A hot desert is a good place to get (geothermal solar wind) energy from the sun.
- Some places have a lot of wind (turbines fuels environments) to get energy.



### Unit 7

- Answer these questions:
  - 3. How can we get electricity from the sofar energy?
  - What can you do with the tidal energy?
- Order the words to make correct sentences:
  - energy make The renewable pollution doesn't.
  - wind A coastal get environment can a lot of.
  - 3. from fuels What made fossil are?
  - 4. work by - wave - and - Wind - movement - turbines.
  - 5. are - Fossil - factories - in - burned - fuels.
- Read and choose the correct answer, a, b, or c:



- - a. the power of the wind b. a machine that makes energy
  - c. a form of energy
- 2. A turbine generates electrical energy by ......
  - burning fossil fuels
- b. using the heat underground
- c. using the power of wind or water
- 3. If you store a type of energy, you can .....
  - keep it for a period of time
    - b, use it for a long time
  - c. make non-renewable forms of energy



- 4. A tide is when the level of the sea gets
  - a. hotter or colder

b. deeper or more shallow

c. higher or lower

## Write an email of (40) words to your friend Manar:

Tell her about the different renewable and non-renewable energies you use in your country and the different environments that help you use the natural resources. Your email address is <a href="mailto:esraa@yahoo.com">esraa@yahoo.com</a>. Your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:manar@school.net">manar@school.net</a>.

From	
To:	
Subject.	
	** ***** *********** ****** **********
	***** \******** ****** ****** *********
	+ ++ + ++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++
	******** ******************************
	++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++
	+++ == ======== +-daabiidddbiiddbiiddabbiiddaaaq =q=== jdyttytdytbiiddaaaaq aqaa ta
	***************************************
	+ pappy
	* 14111444** 41444001444****************
	) Ideadyroonolliadyronniididhhiilidebiildabbbillaebi bidburof w baneli laaa - w a sabaasa





الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary

## Comment of the Commen



cold country دولة باردة



hot springs عيون مالية (ينابيع) ساخته



underground تحت الأرض



holes فتحات - ثقوب



volcanoes



steam



heat (v)





يُشكِّن

come up

ترتفع

### Hydroelectricity

بحار



براكين

hydroelectricity - hydropower mechanical energy الطاقة الكهروماثية



طاقة ميكانيكية





the High Dam السد العالى



generator

مُولِّد



location

موقع



waterwheels سواقي



## Extra Vocabulary

ajotoj Glati

iceland	دولة أسلندا (مب شمال أوروبا)	the River Nike	بهر اثنيل
engineer	משוגוש	machines	ůsí:
get hot	پښال يميح ساطا	flooding	فیصان - طوعان

## Definitions @ S B Today

the place or position that something is in or where something happens

kilowatt : a unit for measuring electrical power equal to 1,000 watts

waterwheel: a large wheel that is turned by flowing water and used to provide the power for machines

## Conjugation of Verbs

## الأمعال المنظمة «Kegular verbs

		45
heat	يُسَدِّن	heated
explain	يشرح - يُوَضِّح	explained
show	يُظهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed
turn	يدور - يَلَمُ	turned

-11-		
refer	'پشير إلى	referred
illustrate	ٍ نُوْمُح - يُنثِن	diustrated
generate	نولد	generated
move	بحرك	moved

## الأمال غير المتظمة العصالة المعال عبد المتظمة المتطمعة المتطمعة المتطمعة المتطمعة المتطمعة المتطمعة المتط

	A PAGE
get hot نشکن- بصبح ساحله	got hot
come up gáljų acialų	came up
give يمنح	gave
break down மும்வீ	broke down

	4	
mean	אניסי - לעומי	meant
build	أسرأ	built
find out	يعرم - يكلشف	found out
take	إيادد - بسلغرق	took

A report is a way to give information about a topic. It often has these features.

A title - this tells you what the report is about.

Photos - these illustrate the report and make it look interesting. A photo can help explain what you mean.

Subtitles - these break down the information into smaller sections by topic.

Facts and figures - a report uses these to show that information is true.

﴾ التقرير هو طريقة لإعطاء معلومات عن موضوع معين. غالبًا ما يحتوي التقرير على الأركان الآتية:

العنوان الرئيسي: ويخبرنا عن الموضوع الذي سيتناوله التقرير. الصور: وهي تفسر التقرير وتجعله يبدو شيقًا، فالصورة يمكن أن تساعد في توضيح وشرح ما تقصده.

العناوينُ الغُرَعية؛ وهي تُقَسِّم المعلومات إلى أجزاء أصغر على حسب الموضوع. الحقائق والأرقام: يستُخدم التقرير الحقائقُ والأرقام ليُؤخِّح أن المعلومات التي يسردها حقيقية,



### Report: Geothermal energy, leeland

### Why iceland?

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot springs o and 200 volcanoes . There is a lot of hot water underground , and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity.

### How does it work?

When water gets hot, it makes steam.

Engineers o in Iceland can make holes o down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves turbines to make electricity.

### Why is it important?

100% of its electricity and heat comes from renewable sources.



TISD 3

و التوالال

Complete O

(Johl-Obil) 9

(TEN) (3



-Step Ahead

## Hydroelectricity

People have used hydroelectricity o (also called hydropower) for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn the waterwheels . The



helped with both farming and making food.

واليونانيون-الأغريث

Now, we can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity. A hydroelectric dam uses the energy in falling water to turn a turbine. The mechanical energy of the moving

Kirkin toolah D

turbine is changed to electrical energy by a generatore.

Guillascalife () **State** 6

Children ()

The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River Nile to generate electricity. The location of

Coope ( 🔞 شفار - طوفار

Aswan made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The dam has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

## Activity Book Text A B

## Kárahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant محطة كاراهيجوكار ليوليد الطامة الكمرومانية

Kárahnjúkar is a hydroelectricity plant o in eastern iceland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant e in Iceland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams o were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs of water. Water from the reservoirs

🕕 محطة توليد لطاقة كهرومائية

و تعجملة طاقة

و جمسه بسوت

😉 ﴿﴿ وَالَاتَ مَاثَيَةً فَيُخْفُفُ

(John) (

🧿 (مُصنع معادل صناعية

travels through 73 Kilometers of underground water tunnels . Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The Kárahnjúkar Dam is the largest of the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690,000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant o.

## Exercises on Lesson (4)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

electricity - waterwheels - Hydroelectricity - Fossil fu

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. ..... means using the energy from moving water to move machines or . The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

underground - volcances - electricity - springs

Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot 6 ... and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water 🛛 .............. this is used to heat homes and to make 6 ......

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

## Fossil fuel - finish - electricity - Aswan

Kareem: What's this picture, Ahmed?

Ahmed: It's a picture of the High Dam.

Kareem : Do you know where it is?

Ahmed: Yes. It's in 0 , .... ... ...

Kareem: When did they @ ..... building it?

Ahmed: It was finished in 1971. Kareem : How can it be useful?

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Iceland is a cold (country continent city).
- 2. We can get water from (volcanoes generators springs).

32

- 3. It's very hot inside (rivers volcanoes dams).
- a. When water gets hot, it makes (ice snow steam).
- S. We can get (hydroelectricity solar energy wind energy) from moving water.
- The mechanical energy is changed to electrical energy by a (generator panel waterwheel).
- 7. The (flooding location turbine) of the High Dam is in Aswan.
- The High Dam stops the River Nile from (watering- generating- flooding).
- 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:
- 1. more Iceland has than hot springs 600.
- 2. is underground a lot of water There hot.
- 3. electricity hydroelectricity We use can to generate.

- 4. finished was The in 1971 High Dam.
- dam turbines has The twelve large.
- 6 Read the following text and answer the questions below:



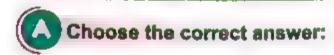
## Karahnjúkar Hydroelectricity Plant

Kárahnjúkar is a hydroelectricity plant (مصنع توليد طاقة كهرومائية) in eastern leeland. The hydroelectric plant is the largest power plant (مصنع طاقة) in leeland. It took five years to build, from 2003 to 2007. Five dams were built across two rivers. This created three large reservoirs (خرانات) of water. Water from the reservoirs travels through 73 Kilometers of underground water tunnels (ألفاق). Then it goes down a deep tunnel to the underground power station. The Kárahnjúkar Dam is the largest of

Rerm 2

### Unit 7

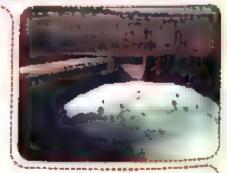
the five dams. It is 193 meters high and 730 meters long. It generates more than 690,000 kilowatts of power a year. The power isn't used to heat homes. It is used for an industrial metal plant.



- 1. Kárahnjúkar is a (solar hydroelectricity tidal) plant in eastern Iceland.
- 2. The plant took (three four five) years to build.
- Answer these questions:
  - 3. How long are the underground water tunnels?
  - 4. What is the power from the Kårahnjúkar Dam used for?
- Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:
  "The High Dam"

### ldeas to help your

► Why Aswan? ► How does it work? ► Why is it important?





## lesson 526

## Math & Project

## الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





, **article** مقالة - مقالة



**project** مشروع



public parks مُنزهات عامة



protect



plant (v)



يمتص

absorb



take ... out پُذرچ



يحمي

**tonne** طن (1,000) کیلو



يزرع

human brain مخ الإنسان



cells خلایا



heart

، قلب



, **beat (v)** پنبض - یخفق



hairs شَغْرَات - شَغْر



## Extra Vocabulary

## كلمات إقامته

garbage	قمامة	better place	أ مكان أفضل
lights		green spaces	ومساحات خضراء
turn off		ideas	امکار
waste (v)	يَهْدِر - پُبَدُد	competition	مسابقة
planet	کوکب	prize	جائزة
homes	مواطن - بيوت	a year	رماد بلا - ماها به

### Math

100 (one hundred)	مائة	1,000,000 (one million)	مبيون
(one thousand)	ம்பி	10,000,000 (ten million)	عشرة مئيون
10,000 (ten thousand)		100,000,000 (one hundred million)	ماثة مليون
100,000 (one hundred thousand)	مائة أثف	1,000,000,000 (one billion)	مليار

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs مُفْعِلُ المُنتِظِّمِةُ المُعِلِّلِ المُنتِظِّمِةِ المُعَالِّ المُنتِظِّمِةِ المُعَالِّ

Fig	Starte 1	1 CEST	BYLLIU.	Past
absorb	يمتض	absorbed	ېلمْب - برمي drop	dropped
protect	reari	protected	cause ហុខ កាលវិក ក្នុងប្រើ	caused
start	يبدا	started	پهدر - يُبَدِّد	wasted
plant	يزرع	planted	recycle العيد تدوير	recycled
answer	يُجِيب - يجاوب	answered	يتمق - بوامق	agreed
turn off	يُطْفِئ	turned off	لا يتفق - يعترضdisagree	disagreed
want	يريد - يرغب	wanted	persuade وَمُنْع	



36

## irregular verbs aabilalijie jisalil

Present	17.61	Pres	ent A	3.2
		draw	يرسم	drew
ينبض - يَحْفِق beat	beat	say	يقول	said

🗀 الأرقام (hundred - thousand - million - billion) لا يجوز جمعها إذا جاء قبلها رقم.

- ▶ five hundred
- two thousand
- hundreds of pupils
- thousands of people
- ten million
- three hundred billion
  - 🔵 أما إذا لم يأتٍ قبلها رقم فيجوز جمعها.
- millions of dollars
- billions of pounds



## Planting trees

'Listen to this, Mom,' said Nessma one day after school. 'This article o says that in 2019, Egypt started a project to plant one million trees in public parks and gardens all over the country. That's amazing!'

'You're right,' said Mom. 'Do you understand why it's important to plant trees?

Nessma wasn't sure. 'They look really nice, don't they? They give us fruit, and they can be homes for animals.

'All those things are true, but trees are even more special than that,' said Mom. 'Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide emissions. This causes air pollution and climate change. But forests can absorb o carbon dioxide. That means they take it out o of the atmosphere and make the air cleaner! Did you know that forests absorb about 2.6 billion tonnes o of carbon dioxide every year?

'Wow, that's a lot of carbon dloxidel' said Nessma. 'So trees are really important in protecting our planetl'













### Listen and say





- 1. The average human brain has about 100 billion brain cells.
- ◄ متوسط مخ الإنسان يحتوي على حوالي 100 مليار خلية دماغية



- 2. The average human has about 100,000 hairs on their head.
  - ◄ متوسط رأس الإنسان يحتوي على حوالي 100,000 شعرة.



- 3. Your heart beats about 35 million times a year.
  - 🖊 پنبض قلبك حوالي 35 مليون مرة في العام.

### Listening



- So, the first question is: What can our country of do to help the environment? That's interesting. I think our country can help by using more renewable energy o.
- I agree. That would be a good way to use less fossil fuel o. I also think it's a good idea to plant more trees and protect the forests we have.
- و المرابعة و

و الوقود الحفري

- Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.
- و تطفينا الأنوار)
- And what can I do to help the environment? Well, I can recycle plastic and not drop garbage o.
- Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste electricity.



38

Step Aheed

When you work in pairs, take time to listen to your partner. Say if you agree or disagree. You can use phrases like these:

lagree,

I'm not sure.

l disagree.

🔾 عندما تعمل مع شخص آخر، خذ وقتك لتستمع إلى شريكك في العمل، وأخبره ما إذا كنت تنفق معه أو لا تنفق معه، ويمكنك استخدام عبارات كالعبارات الآتية:

أنا لا أتفق معك.

◄ أنا غير متأدُد،

◄ أنا أتفق معك.

## Make our town a better place!

Our town is a great place to live, but what can we do to make the environment here better?

Do you want more green spaces to play in, cleaner streets, or less traffic? Make a poster with your ideas. There's a prize for the best idea!



## Exercises on Lessons

Read and complete the conversations:



l agree – I disagree – I'm not sure

: Fossil fuels are cleaner than renewable energy.

. I don't think that's right.

: I think it's better to recycle plastic than glass.

: 2 ....... i think they are both important.

: I think we should turn off lights and not waste electricity.

В

## Choose the correct answer:

We should (burn - plant - cut) trees. We need more trees everywhere.

2. The Earth is the (plane - planet - plant) where we live.

3. It's important to (protect - pollute - breathe) our environment.

	Unit 7	
	<ol> <li>Trees (absorb - generate - release) carbon dioxide.</li> <li>Your (brain - head - heart) beats about 35 million times a year.</li> <li>Turn (on - of - off) the lights when you leave the room.</li> <li>You shouldn't drop (garbage - trees - ideas). Put it in the bin.</li> <li>It's important not to (turn on - use - waste) electricity.</li> </ol>	
	Read and complete the dialogue with the words from	the box;
	renewable - plant - fossil fuel - environment	)
	Tamer: What can our country do to help the  Hazem: That's interesting. I think our country can help by using energy.  Tamer: I agree. That would be a good way to use less for also think it's a good idea to  protect the forests we have.  Hazem: Yes, you're right. Forests help to protect the environment.	ssil fuel. (
	Write the numbers. Then put them in the correct order from the smallest (1) to the biggest (7)	
	ten thousand	$\bigcirc$
	6 one million	
	G one hundred million	
	d one thousand	$\bigcirc$
	© one billion	
	One hundred thousand	
	g ten million	
	Order the words to make correct sentences:	
रिस्सा र	1. trees - plant - How many - Egypt - will?  2. can - Forests - carbon - absorb - dioxide.	
اه (	40	Step Aheol

- 3. cleaner Forests air the make.
- 4. do we can the environment to help What?
- 5. trees more should plant We,
- 6. than energy Solar cleaner is fossil fuels.
- 7. should fewer use We fuels fossil.
- 6. lights Turn off don't and electricity waste.
- Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### save - recycle - electricity - garbage

- : What can you do to help the environment?
- : Well, I can 0 . . . . plastic and not drop Sara
- : Yes, we shouldn't drop garbage, but I think the most important thing is to turn off lights and not waste 6
- Sara : Yes, you're right. Turning off lights and not wasting electricity help to save energy.
- Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

### "How can we make our town a better place?"

- ► Ideas to help yours ➤ more green spaces
- cleaner streets

- less traffic
- more places to play and do sports











(4)4

لص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. There aren't many houses or buildings in the (urban city rural town) environment.
- 2. The rural environment is a (noisy -quiet loud terrible) place to live,
- 3. There can be a lot of traffic in the (polar desert rural urban) environment.
- 4. The urban environment is (densely populated sparsely populated empty silent).

### 2 Listen and complete:

(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. We help to protect our .....
- 2 .... .. energy doesn't run out.
- 3. We can get renewable energy from ... resources.
- 4. Renewable energy doesn't make . .

### B Reading (11Ms)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

electricity - turbines - springs - steam

## Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

There are two of the polar environments in the world: the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy in this environment, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live there, but there aren't any trees or flowers. There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment, so that place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live there, so it is sparsely populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The Arctic and the Antarctic are examples of the (rural polar coastal urban) environment.
- 2. There aren't any (animals trees people ice) in the polar environment

### Answer these questions:

- 4. How many people live in the polar environment?
- What is the weather like in the polar environment?

## The Reader (Shipwrecks)

## A- Read and write T (True) or F (False): (4Ms) Archaeologists were working at a site under the Red Sea. Thônis - Heracleion was a very old city. Choose the correct answer: 3. The Red Sea can be dangerous because there are strong (ships -

- currents shells bricks) in it.
- 4. When ships have been under water for a long time, they can become artificial (storms - reefs - boats - tsunamis).

### 6 Choose the correct answer:

(41/4)

- 1. Listen, they (talk -talks -are talking -talked) about different environments
- 2. Manar (am -is -are -were) coming with us.
- 3. What's Mom (cook cooked cooks cooking)?
- 4. We are (helping -helped -help -helps) our environment to be a better place.

## Order the words to make correct sentences:

(2Ms

1. does - trees - Why - a lot of - plant - Egypt?

í

- important plastic is recycle lt to.
- B Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element (54)

### "Energy"

#### (e) Ideasita/halp:yell/

renewable energy

non-renewable energy









#### in this unit I will ....

- understand some traditional celebrations.
- learn about some traditional recipes.
- compare the present simple and present continuous.
- understand a conversation about clothes.
- read about Egypt's traditions.
- understand and write a tourist brochure.
- learn about traditional fables,
- write a story.

#### Objectives

Festivals and celebrations: celebration, celebrate, charity, creation, fairgrounds. fast, feast, sacrifice, observe, prayer, sunset, sunnse

Traditional food: beans, garlic, herbs, pastry, olive oil, spices, vinegar Vocabulary

Traditional clothes: buttons, galabeya, hizam, kaftan, linen, loose, sandals,

Traditional hospitality: guest, host, generous, feast

Fables and folklore: character, conflict, plot, resolution, secret, setting

Language

- We always eat it with bread. - It never has any meat in it. - We often eat hawawshi with salad. - I can easily show you, too!

Grandma cooked very well.

- Today I'm talking to Or Samir - What are they wearing now?

A text about festivals; a story about traditional recipes, a text about cultural traditions in Egypt

Writing A tourist brochure about your region giving facts and opinions

Speaking

Describing what people are wearing Listening

A radio program about what people were in the past, a description of the Abu-Simbel Sun Festival

Life skills Collaboration: giving reasons for opinions

Values

**Participation** 

Issues and challenges Citizenship integrated cross-

Reading

curriculum topics Literature: fables and folklore

### Important festivals esson

AT THE THAT STORY IT



Main Vocabulary الدرس الأساسية في الدرس



celebrate يحتفل



celebration احتفال



festival of creation , decorate احتفال الخثق



يُزيِّن - يُزْخُرِف



feast عيد - وليمة

start of spring

Coptic Easter



احتفال إسلامي



Islamic festival Hajj pilgrimage فريضة الحج



prayers الملوان - الصلاة - دعوات

لامع - براقي

شمعة كهربائية

### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إصافية

fairgrounds	ملاهب	sunrise	أشرو <mark>ق الشمس</mark> الحدد
rides va	ألعاب ركوب مب الملا	sunset	أروب الشمس
lantern	فانوس	give out	إنواع
grateful	شاکر - ممتن	sacrifice	ومدي ر
ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	traditional dishes	לצים זמוערעה
nous life	āsusa ālus	alass iar	برطمان زحاجي

bright بداية الربيع



46

electric candle عيد القطح القبطب

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs::वेवक्रांजा ।।।।

<b>⊕Pr</b>	esent	Past
last	بدوه - يستمر	lasted
leam	ينعلم	learned (learnt
start	וויבן	started
play	يلعب	played
تعرض إإ00	پسلق (البيض) -	boiled
paint	يُلَوْن	painted
visit	يزور	visited
want	نائد - تاغن	wanted

Pre	sent -	Past
ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked
Offer	يعرض	offered
enjoy	واملس	enjoyed
wash	يغسل	washed
compare	يمّارن	compared
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
decorate	يُزَيُّن	decorated
sacrifice	بُضِجُسُ	sacrificed

## الأفعال غير المنتظمة المعال غير المنتظمة

-Pn	sent D	Past
put	يضع	put
understa	nd രമപ്പ	understood
Write	يكتب	wrote
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought
hear	ഉവച്ചു	heard
find	بَدِد	found
give	ٹعظی - تمرح	gave
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up

Pres	ent	Past
spend	يمّضي (ومَتًا)	spent
make	أسع - تخهل	made
give out	يُوزُع - يعطب	gave out
come up	ئشرق	came up
go down	تغزب	went down
say	يقول	said
stick	يلصق	stuck
hang	يَعْلُق	hung

#### Unit 8

Preser		Past	Preso		Pasti
get ready	يسلعد	got ready	drink	يشرب	drank
meet	يقابل	met	ride	يركب	rode
has - have di	امر - معلد	had	wear	עלגיע	Wore

Definitions SB stedents

prayer	: important w	vords which	you say	to give	thanks	or ask for
--------	---------------	-------------	---------	---------	--------	------------

grateful	:	feeling that you want to thank someone	ĺ
----------	---	--	---

fairgrounds	: an open area of land where people can enjoy rides
-------------	---

celebrate	: to spend time with others, being I	happy and having fun
-----------	--------------------------------------	----------------------

give out : to offer something

## Read and learn

### Did you know?

مل تعلم؟

The ancient Egyptians had many festivals. Wepet Renpet was a festival marking the beginning of a new year. It celebrated the first flooding of the Nile. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it around mid-July.

كان للمصريون القدماء العديد من الاجتفالات. كان ويبيت رينبيت احتفالًا سابة العام الجديد. وكان احتفالًا بالفيضان الأول للنيل. كان المصريون القدماء يحتفلون به في منتصف شهر يوليو تقريبًا.

### Sham El-Nessim

I love celebrating • Sham El-Nessim with my family.

The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old.

The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it, as a festival of creation • and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday.









gecause it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm. I always wake up at sunrise to get ready. Lots of people go with their family to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food and play music and games.



Sometimes there are fairgrounds o with rides for children . they are a lot of fun!

🚯 شروق الشمس

Shall und 6

tralia 🔕

Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing olds of different traditional food o, often until sunset of We also boil eggs, then paint and decorate them in different colors to make them look beautiful.

و طعام تقلیدی 🐧

المعالمة المعال

### ed Al-Adho

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him •) listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice • a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We



give out a meat to our family and friends. During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful of for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes a for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Haji pilgrimage a.

terminative O

र्थपञ्चे 😝

sigl 6

و ملوات-الملاؤ

😉 شاكرين-مماثين

🐧 أغفل علايس

dayig. 🕗

و بغريفة الحج

### A lantern for Ramadan

This year for Ramadan I made a special lantern o. I washed a glass jar o and stuck o some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small electric candle o to put inside. I hung o it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and bright in the night time!



## Exercises on Lesson





### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. People (decorate celebrate create) Sham El-Nessim at the beginning of spring.
- Eid Al-Adha is an important (fairground lantern festival) for Muslims.
- Muslims go to mosques for (fasting prayers pilgrimage).
- 4. We are (grateful careful useful) to Allah for all the good things in our lives.
- 5. Many people wake up at (sunrise sunset moonlight) to get ready for work.
- The children enjoyed lots of rides at the (library sports centre fairground).
- 7. At Eid Al-Adha, many people (boil sacrifice hang) a sheep or a cow.
- 8. In Ramadan, some people make (feasts lanterns rides). They are pretty and bright in the night time!
- 9. In Zu Elhijja, Muslims go to the Hajj (feast fairground pilgrimage).
- 10. Eid Al-Adha is a Muslim (festival new year prayers).
- Sunrise is when the sun (comes up in the morning goes down at night).







## 2

## Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### Eid Al-Adha - spring - sunrise - Sham El-Nessim

Samy : Good morning, Adel.

Adel : Good morning, Samy.

Samy: What's your favorite festival?

Adel : My favorite festival is 0.

Samy : What does Sham El-Nessim celebrate?

Adel : It celebrates the start of @

Samy : How do you celebrate Sham El-Nessim?

Adel : I always wake up at 6 ... to get ready. I meet

my friends. We eat traditional food and play games.

## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### feast - grateful - pilgrimage - prayers

During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for 

we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a 

together. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elhijja when Muslims go to the Hajj

## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

electric - feast - lantern - bright

This year for Ramadan I made a special 
a glass jar and stuck some colored paper on the side. My mom gave me a small 
candle to put inside. I hung it on the front door of our house. It is pretty and 
in the night time!



### Unit 8

- 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. celebrating love I Sham El-Nessim my family with.
- 2. decorate paint eggs People and at Sham El-Nessim.
- 3. Eid Al-Adha important an festival is Islamic.
- 4. the Hajj pilgrimage go Muslims in Zu Elhijja to.
- 5. for Ramadan How make a lantern you do?
- Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

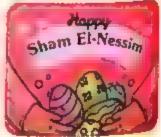
### "My favorite festival"

### (in Ideas to helplyou)

- What festival.
- What you often eat.
- What you wear.
- How you celebrate it.



?





## Grandma's recipes



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary









recipe وصفة

cook book كتاب طهي

meal

dish أكلة





فزن





delicious food طعاه لذيذ

layers

طبقات

وجبة

digest

يهضم

### Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافية

,			
beans	فول	pastry	مطاثر - مُعَجِّنَات
gartic	ثوم	bread	<b>گ</b> ڼز
onions	بصل	rice	ן ונ
chilli	فلفل حار (شطة)	meat	أحم
spices	توابل	beef	لحم بقرى
herbs	باشدأ	lamb	لحم الضأن
tomato sauce	منمة طواطم	fish	طمس
lemon juice	عصير ليمون	salad	شلطة
olive oil	زيت زيلون	vinegar	إخل

### Unit 8

carefully	ا <b>اهس</b> بعنایة - باهتمام - بحرص	मारा स्म
easily	hard بسهولة	Trans

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs منال الملاطمة الأفعال الملاطمة

Present		Past		sent	Past
cook	يظهو - يطبخ	cooked	describe	يَصِف - يشرح	described
look'	ihr6	looked	share ع شخص)	يشارك (شيلًا م	shared
digest	يطشم	digested	love	بحب	loved
press	يضغط	pressed	try ·	يحاول	tried

## الأفطال عن المنتظمة ما المنتظمة الافطال المنتظمة

Prese	ñ	Past	Pr	esent	Past
choose	يختار	chose	tell	يُخْبِر	told
eat	ياكل	ate	get	يحصل على	got
take (time)	يستغرق (ر	took (time)	show	يُظْهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed

## Read and learn-

### Did You know?

### مل تعلم؟

Bread was important in ancient Egypt. There are paintings in the tomb of Ty in Saqqara which show how people made it. كان الخبز مهمًا في مصر المديمة. يوجد رسومات في مقبرة تب في من الفرن الناس. (مقبرة واج تي، وهو أحد كهنة أو موظفي الأسرة الخامسة في القرن الرابع والعشرين قبل الميلاد، تم التشافها عام 2018).



54

### Grandma's cook book

Aya was visiting her grandma. Grandma was making a meal •, and Aya was sitting in the kitchen looking carefully • at Grandma's books. Grandma cooked very well and she had her own cook book •.

It described o different meals and had pictures of delicious food.

'Wow, Grandma,' said Aya. 'You have lots of different meals in your book!'

'Yes, I do,' said Grandma. 'I often share recipes o with family and friends in other parts of Egypt. I like to try new things.

These look delicious! Can you make all of these?"

'Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too! What would you like to make?' 'Hmm, that's difficult,' said Aya. 'There are so many recipes to choose from o.'



**Z**120 0

و بعنایه

و كالوطيخ

ध्वेक्ट्रं 🔾

🗿 آشارك وصفات

👌 بأختار منط

### **Rul Medames**

This dish • uses beans cooked with lemon juice, garlic •, onion, chilli •, and herbs •. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread.



eigh e

افلفل حارا
 أعشاب



### Fatta

Fatta has layers of rice and bread with tomato sauce of vinegar of and meat. It takes a long time to digest of, so we don't eat it very often.





#### Hawawshi

Hawawshi is delicious. It is made with bread and beef o or lamb o. The meat is cooked with onion, herbs, and spices o. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad.



### Sayadayo

People who live near the coast often make sayadeya. We use fish, which is baked in the oven o with clive oil o, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices. It's delicious!



# Grammar Study

## طروم التكرار Adverbs of frequency

We can use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often something happens. They can help to describe habits or routines. **◄ يمكننا استخدام ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم عدد مرات تكرار حدوث شيء ما.** يمكن أن تساعد ظروف التكرار في وصف عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث، مثل:

alway 100

We always eat Fatta with bread.

usually 80% Faten is usually early for school.

I often share recipes with family. Öffere 50

We sometimes eat Hawawshi with salad.

Ful Medames never has any meat in # neviii D

We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be). ♦ نستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (verb to be).

### has layers at a

- O Fatta always has layers of rice and bread.
- owe usually eat Ful Medames for breakfast.
- O Hawawshi is often made with bread and beef or lamb.
- o people sometimes eat Hawawshi with salad.
- O'm never ready to go out on cold nights.



## Remember

## الصفات والظروف Adjectives & Adverbs موريطان والظروف

Adjective		Adverb	
careful	دريص - څډر		ن تحرص - بحدر
easy	سهل	easily	سووت
good	جيد	well	ر ىشكل حيد

# The adjective describes a noun and precedes it, whereas

- The adjective describes a noun and precedes it, whereas the adverb describes a verb and follows it.
  - 📕 الصفة تصف اسم وتأتي قبله، بينما الظرف يصف فعل ويأتي بعده.
- ▶ He is a careful driver.

► He drives carefully.

It was an easy test.

- I answered the test easily.
- Grandma is a good cook.
- Grandma cooks well.

## Exercises on Lesson (2)

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### sauce - digest - dish - meat

l like ful medames. This 0

uses beans cooked with

lemon juice, garlic, onion, chilli, and herbs. It never has any meat in it. We always eat it with bread. I also like Fatta. Fatta has layers of rice and bread with tomato ..., vinegar, and meat. It takes

a long time to 0

, so we don't eat it very often.

## Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

: Where do you live, Jana? Nora

: I live near the coast. Jana

: What is your favorite 0 ... Nora

Jana : It's sayadeya.

Nora: How do you cook it?

: I use ②. .. ..., which is baked in the oven with olive Jana

oil, onion, tomatoes, herbs, and spices.

: Is it 3.....? Nora

: Yes, of course. Jana

### Choose the correct answer:

1. I (always - never - sometimes) drink milk for breakfast. I like drinking it every moming.

2. I (never - sometimes - usually) brush my teeth before going to bed. I

brush them 6 times a week.

- 3. They (always sometimes never) eat hawawshi. They eat it from time to time.
- 4. He (never often always) eats pizza. He doesn't like it.
- 5. She (always never often) phones her grandma. This happens four nights a week.
- 6. We (always eats eat always always eat) ful medames with bread.
- People who live near the coast (often make make often often makes) sayadeya.
- 8. Hawawshi (always have always has has always) meat with bread.
- Ful medames (has never never has never have) any meat in it.
- 10. This is a/an (quickly easy easily) recipe.
- 11. I can make this meal (easily easy quick).
- 12. Maha is a (good well slowly) tennis player.
- 13. She plays tennis (quick good well).



- He was looking (careful careless carefully) at the book.
- We are (carefully careful carelessly) when we cross the road.
- Sayadeya is dad's favorite (oven dish plate).
- 7. This (recipe layer meal) shows you how to make fatta.
- We eat three (layers recipes meals) every day.

## Read the following text and answer the questions below:

There's always lots of delicious food! One of Ramadan's days, my mom made Fatta for breakfast. It has layers of rice and bread with tomato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest. Mom also made kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I helped her in the kitchen. That night, there were lots of different things to eat, but the kunafa was my favorite.

## A Choose the correct answer:

- 1 in Ramadan, we have breakfast in the (morning evening afternoon) at sunset.
- Aya's mom made (sayadeya fatta hawawshi) for breakfast on one of Ramadan's days.

## B Answer these questions:

- 3. Which food takes a long time to digest?
- What was Aya's favorite food?

## Order the words to make correct sentences:

1 have - your cook book - You - meals - different - in.



- मा, He was looking (careful careless carefully) at the book.
- . We are (carefully careful carelessly) when we cross the road.

on section of Property

- 16, Sayadeya is dad's favorite (oven dish plate).
- 17. This (recipe layer meal) shows you how to make fatta.
- , We eat three (layers recipes meals) every day.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hil I'm Aya, In Ramadan, we have breakfast in the evening at sunset. There's always lots of delicious food! One of Ramadan's days, my morn made Fatta for breakfast. It has layers of rice and bread with tornato sauce, vinegar, and meat. It takes a long time to digest. Morn also made kunafa, with sweet pastry. We had it with soft cheese. I helped her in the kitchen. That night, there were lots of different things to eat, but the kunafa was my favorite.

## A Choose the correct answer:

- 1 In Ramadan, we have breakfast in the (morning evening afternoon) at sunset.
- 2. Aya's mom made (sayadeya fatta hawawshi) for breakfast on one of Ramadan's days.

## B Answer these questions:

- 3. Which food takes a long time to digest?
- 4. What was Aya's favorite food?

(1010 1 0 11 0 1 1 0 1

## Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. have - your cook book - You - meals - different - in.

## Unit 8

- 2 Grandma How recipes does her get?
- 3. important was Egypt In Bread ancient.
- 4. make you What to would like?
- 5. eat bread with We beans always.
- 6 Write a paragraph of (40) words:

"What you have for breakfast"





## Language



Main Vocabulary الأساسية في الدرس



loose clothes ملابس فضفافة



**linen** مُماش الكتان



**leather** جلد



made from



<mark>galabeya</mark> جلابية



striped kaftan مُفطان مقلم



sandals صندل



حداء



scarf (pL scarves) عيموح



sash حزام من القماش



sleeve ثم



button

زر - زرار

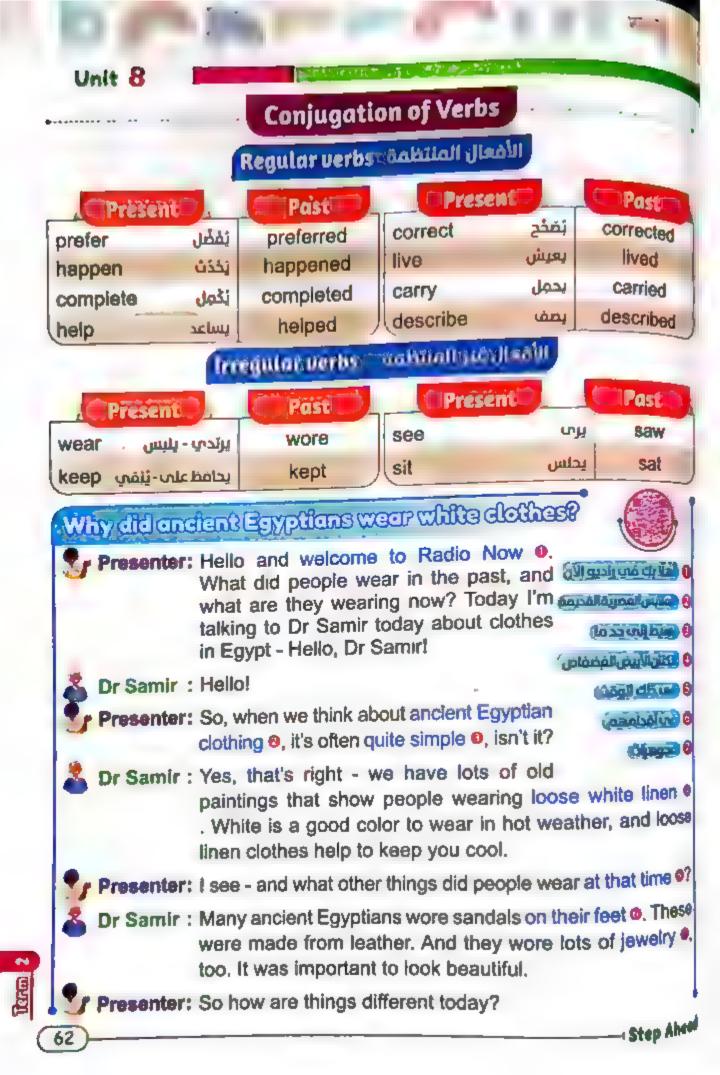


hizam

الحزام



**jewelry** مجوهرات



pr Samir: Well, there's a lot more color in traditional Egyptian clothing today, but many people still prefer loose clothing. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves on the sometimes wear a striped of kaftan

(रियोक संदूर्धि (रहीक व्यक्त क्षेत्र विदेशिक (रहीक व्यक्त क्ष्म विदेशिक (रहकमध्ये (रहकमध्ये

over this with a hizam, which is a colored sash around their body. Men and women also wear items on their heads such as scarves or different styles of hats. In some cities, though on men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts. too. It was important to look beautiful.





- Linen keeps you cool.
- In some places in Egypt, men sometimes wear a striped kaftan.

### We use it to express facts or habits.

■ يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادة (فعل متكرر الحدوث).

I wear a blue uniform to my school.

Unit	8						
▶ The	The sun comes up in the morning						
■ We i	ometime	-	a wards wi	th the pr	esent sil	mple tense,	
	:	البسيط مث	زمن المضارع	الدالة على	ں الکلمات	الستحدم بعص	إحيانًا ما
»Ke	y words	2		1			
alw	Tys .	دالمًا ح	motimes	أحيانا	UGAGI,	لمًا	الردا - مط
ofte	m	tile, u	ually	مادة	every (d	ay - week_)	کل
► We	go to Ale	xandria	every summ	er.			
▶ Da	d never d	rives to v	vork. He alw	ays goes	by train		
			main verb				t.
	da (s or e lar noun)		l Walu Asın	11 1110 0-	,		
anigo	ruer noun <sub>.</sub> H	μ a.eha.	سم مفرد - <b>ا</b>	لفاعل (أي ا	6) إذا كان ا	لفعل (5 أو 55	و نضيف ا
<b>▶</b> N	/om cook	s us a di	ferent dish	every day	1.		
			in the ever				
₩e a	dd (es) to	verbs t	hat end in (	ss – sh – (	sh - 0 - X	:).	
			(ss - sh - c	h - o - x)	لمنتهية ب	(es) للأفعال ا	انضيف
go	<b>→</b>	goes		brush	<b>→</b>	brushes	
wart	ch →		hes	fix	<b>→</b>	fixes	
▶.			r every two				
					change	(v) into (i)	then a
		ids in (y)	after a co	nsonuiri,	cuenge	(7) 1110 (1)	COPERIOR
(es).	.(es)	فبل إضافة	تقلب إلى (أ) أ	ىرف ساكن،	ىسبوقة بح	, المعل يـ (y) ه	الو انتهى
fly	<b>→</b>	flies		carry	->	carries	)
			les				
➤ She sometimes cames a heavy bag to school.							
In the negative form, we use (don't - doesn't) then the bare verb.							
-							
ا عند نفي زمن المضارع البسيط نستخدم (don't - doesn't) ثم الفعل في المصدر. ► They don't prefer loose clothes.							
▶ The galabeya doesn't have short sleeves.							
the interrogative form, we use (do - does) at the beginning							
	of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.						
of the destion of area me destion wold with the pole Asie.							

### Lesson 3

عند عمل سؤال على المضارع البسيط نبدأ السؤال بـ (do - does) أو نضع إحداهما بعر أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

## Remember 553



- O Do you like Hawawshi?
- O Do Ali and Ehab play together?
- O Does she have white dresses?
- O Does Tamer help at home?
- O How do you go to school?
- O What time does she go to bed?

- Yes, I do
- No, they don't.
- Yes, she does.
- No, he doesn't.
- I go by bus.
- ► She goes to bed at ten o'clock.

### Exercises on Lesson

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The sun (is coming up come up comes up) in the morning.
- 2. My uncle always (wear wears is wearing) dark colored shirts.
- 3. They usually (wake up are waking up wakes up) late on Friday.
- 4. Look, he (celebrate celebrates is celebrating) his birthday.
- 5. We (visit are visiting visits) our grandparents every Saturday.
- 6. I (eats -am eating -eat) breakfast before going to school every morning.
- 7. Dalia (is taking take takes) three sandwiches to school every day.
- 6. The sun (go is going goes) down in the evening.
- 9. Mom (Isn't doesn't don't) like eating at restaurants.
- 10. They (aren't don't doesn't) talk loudly in the library.
- 11. He doesn't (use uses is using) buses. He has a car.

### Unit 8

- 12. What does she (eat eats eating) for lunch?
- 13. (Do Does is) Ahmed wear sandals?
- 14. (Are Does Do) you go to the park on the weekend?
- 15. They (get gets are getting) ready to go out now.
- 16. Mom often (make makes is making) very nice meals.
- 17. Every year, we (are traveling travels travel) to Alexandria by train.
- 18. What (is do does) a good color to wear in hot weather?
- 19. She sleeps on the weekend, but today she (help helps is helping) her mom.
- 20. Mona doesn't (play plays playing) computer games at night,
- Complete the text with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:



Today Hana 
... (wear) a blue dress. She usually
... (wear) a T-shirt and a skirt, but today 
...

(be) a special day. She ..... (celebrate) Eid Al-Fitr with her family.

Today Adam (help) his mom make ful medames. They often (eat) meat but today they

(make) a vegetarian recipe.

### Read and choose the correct answer, a or b:



- 1. Fares is in the garden with his Dad. Fares
  - a. helps him

**b.** is helping him

2. Dina's mom in an office every day.

a. works

b. is working

3. Hello! ..... for a bus?

a. Are you waiting

b. Do you wait

Connect Plus 4-

		_
		-
	40.14	- 34
•		

whole family is together. Grandma and Grandpa (sit) in the living room. Nadla's brother, Khaled (give) his grandparents some special cakes. Nadia (make) these cookies at Eid Al-Fitr. They are Khaled's favorite! Mom and Dad always (give) Nadla and Khaled presents. Eid Al-Fitr is Nadia's favorite festival!

## 6 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Laura:

Tell her about the traditional clothes in your country. What do men and women often wear? Tell her about your favorite clothes and what you wear on your special days? Your email address is <a href="mailto:hana@gmail.com">hana@gmail.com</a>. Your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:hana@yahoo.com">hana@yahoo.com</a>.

To Subject:

पिटांका 2

# Welcome to Egypt



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary







host

مضيف

guest

welcoming visitors Egyptian traditions ِ الترحيبُ بالزائرين

تقالبد مصرية







آلهة



region

منطقة - إقليم

palace

قصر

gods

oasis

واحة



amazing sights مشاهد (مناظر) رائعة



Sun Festival مهرجان الشمس



statues تماثيل



main temple المعبد الأساسي



castle قلعة



museum متحف



### Famous places

## أأماكل ستناخوره









Pyramids of Giza Luxor Temple أهرامات الجيزة

معبد الأقصر

the Red Sea البحر الأحمر

the River Nile ندر النيل



National Park منتزه قومب



the Valley of the Kings وادي الملوك



**Abu Simbel Temple** معبد أبو سمبل

### Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافيق

boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	friendly	
scuba diving من سطح الماء	الغوص بأنبوبة تئفس يخرج	famous for	مشهور ب
pienie		generous	ر والمن - نورتان
go camping	يذهب للتخيرم	celebrate	الحثمل
reasons	أسباب	Information	معلومات
opinion	ပုဂံ	of course	الطبع
except	اعدام	cost .	الكلف بتكلف

typical meal	stuffed vegetables وجبة مثانية	خفار محشو
vegetable stew	dried salted fish شورية خضار	مملح مجفف
soup	வ்றன் is served	منفام

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbskäabilall illeöll

Past

## Present

support يدعم - بسائد supported answer نجيب - يجاوب answered نِحْيْم (فَبِ مِكَانِ) camp camped بيقى - يظل stayed stay

### reseme

يضع خطًا تدن underline invite يدعو - يعزم bake يخبز celebrate يحتفل

### 100

underlined invited baked celebrated

#### irregular verbs الأفعال غيرا المنتظمة

### Present 🗐 🖟

Past cost يكلف - يتكلف cost prind يُحفِر - يجلب brought يعنب mean meant

Hill	Sent	Pusu
shine	تسطع - تُشْرِق	shone
get up	لستيقظ	got up
sing	پَفَلْب	sang

### Read and learn

### Welcome to Egypt







Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights o, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people.

Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions o before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests o to their home.



### Unit 8

If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host o usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. A typical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew o, soup, stuffed vegetables o, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous o and are very happy when you ask for more food.

This means you enjoyed their delicious meal! Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food, too. At Eid Al-Fitr, people bake special cookies called kahk, with sugar on top. At Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried salted fish, called fesikh. If you visit Egypt at these times, you should try these dishes!

### The Abu Simbel Sun Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simbel. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year of people celebrate the Abu Simbel Sun Festival there, on February 22<sup>nd</sup> and October 22<sup>nd</sup>, On these days, light from the sun at sunrise of shines of all the way inside the main temple, to the rooms inside.

There are four statues inside the temple: those of Ramses, Ra, Amun, and Ptah. The sunlight shines on all of them

except @ Ptah. He is always in the dark. People celebrate @

the Abu Simbel Sun Festival by getting up early to see the light inside the temple at sunrise. Then people eat, drink and sing to celebrate this special day.



O COME

CONTROL O

madil (dis) 6

(TAN) 0

CEND O

CALLY O

# Exercises on Lesson (4)

regead and complete the text with the words from the box:

# statues - temples - shines - Festival

Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simble. Outside the there are some very big of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simble Sun october 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the room inside.

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

# guest - visit - Temple - Pyramids

Youssef : Hi. Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : Hi. Yes, it's my first 1 .... to Egypt.

Youssef: How long will you stay here?

Tourist : I will stay here for one week.

Youssef: What places do you want to visit in Egypt?

Tourist: I will start with the 2 ... , ... , of Giza.

the River Nile.

Tourist: I won't. I'm sure it will be a great tour.

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

- There are amazing (people dishes sights) in Egypt like the Pyramids of Giza.
- 2 (Visitors Hosts Teachers) come to Egypt from different parts of the world.
- 3. She (invented invited interviewed) lots of people to her wedding party last week
- 4. Our neighbor is very (generous- poor- hard). He always gives us sweets and chocolate.

- 5. When we have (sisters hosts guests) at home, we welcome them warmly.
- There's a big (statue tomb museum) in the middle of the square, its
  for king Ramses II. It's very tall and huge.
- 7. Egypt is famous (of -for -from) the Pyramids of Giza.
- 8. Abu Simble (Museum Statue Temples) are in the south of Egypt,
- 9. The (guests hosts visitors) were very generous. They gave us lots of foods and drinks!
- 10. It's (light -dark -shine) inside. I can't see anything.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home.

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. You can eat delicious (sight -people -food) in Egypt.
- 2. The Pyramids are in (Cairo Glza Luxor).

# Answer these questions:

- 3. What do visitors like to learn about?
- 4. What are Egyptian people famous for?

# 5 Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. to visit fantastic is Egypt a country.
- 2 much There see to is so.

- g in Egypt people You meet can friendly.
- learn about traditions to like Visitors Egyptian.
- gare Egyptian visitors welcoming famous for people.
- festivals traditional Egyptian Some have food.
- 7, are the temple There statues four inside.
- shines The sun on never of Ptah the statue.

se sy so sorre a sack a r orry oscial sorre sorre a rore ores. The sack

6 Write a tourist brochure about your region:



### Mideas to help you:

- ▶ Give information for visitors.
- ▶ Write about a festival.
- Say why you think visitors would enjoy it.





# Lessons - Fables and folklore

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





**tale** قصة - حدوثة



shipwreck حطاه، سفينة



shipwrecked قملينة محطمة



sailor بخار



special job



go on a journey یذهب میں رحلت



island جزیرة



servant

خادم

### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافيت

worried	مُلِق	successful	نلجح - موفق
frightened	خالف	safe	أمن
problems	مشاكل	terrible place	مكان مريع
Be patient.	کن صبورًا.	moral	درس أدلاقي - عظة

### Conjugation of Verbs

### Regulariverbs annually livalit

Près	entil	Pasu	Pre	sent 🗀	Past
laugh	يضحك	laughed	return	يعود - يرجع	returned
travel	پسافر	traveled	look for	يبحث عن	looked for

### Lessons 5-6

#Present	Past	A CIPPESONU		Päst
pass down نَفْرُر - يِنْم تَنَاقُلُهُ	passed down	smile	يبتسم	smiled
join together تنجمع - تجلمع	joined together	solve	يحل	solved
sacrifice עַבְאַי	sacrificed	decide	نفزر	decided

# irregular verbs addition and please

@Pres		Rast	Prese	in Car	Post
get stuck أ يبك غيث	in ثعلق في - تلأ	got stuck in	take	ياخذ	took
get home	يعود للمنزل	got home	become	بُصبِح	became
fall into	تسوط مِت	fell into	send	پُرسِل	sent
fall down	تسوط	fell down	teach	يُدَرِّس - يُعَلَّم	taught
speak	נזבגט	spoke	leave	يغادر	left
sink	يغرق	sank	make into	يُحُوِّل إلى	made into
swim	يسبح - يعوم	swam	know	تعرب - أعرب	knew
begin	ببدا	began	tell	يخبر	told

# A good story has .....

characters	: people, animals or imaginary things.	شخصيات
setting	: where the story happens.	مكان الأحداث
a plot	: exciting events that join together.	حبكة الرواية - سير الأحداث
conflict	: a problem that the characters have to	solve المشكلة التي يجب حلها - ال
resolution	: when the problem is solved and the st	ory ends.
		الحل ونهاية القصة



# Didiyou know?

مل تعلم؟

Fables and folklore are types of stories that are passed down from one group of people to another group of people. They teach us a lesson or "moral", and are often about animals, plants or things that happen in nature. There are many stories from ancient Egypt.

الأساطير (القصص الغير حقيقية) وقصص التراث الشعبي هي ألماط من القصص والتي يَنِهَلَ مِن مَجِمُوعَهُ مِنَ النَّاسُ إِلَى مَجِمُوعَةَ أَخْرِى مِنَ النَّاسُ. إِلَهُمْ يَعَلَّمُونَا دَرِسَ أَو عظة وهم في الغالب عن الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الأشياء التي تحدث في الطبيعة. يوجد الأثير من القصص من مصر القديمة.

### ملحوظة هامة:

عند استخدام الحيوانات أو الطيور كشخصيات في القصة نعاملهم معاملة العاقل أي الضمائر التي تعود عليهم هي (He - She) أو (him - her),

### The tale of the stilp wrecked sailer

Long ago, the King asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful o. When he returned, he was frightened about what the King would say. His servant o spoke to him.

'You must tell the King that you tried your best o.' he said.

'I don't want to say that I was not successful,' said

Coppe 0

digga-350 0

SECTION 6 'Listen to my story,' said the servant. 'I was a sailor, too. I went on a journey for the King with the best sailors in the country. But a storm o came, and our ship sank. I fell into the sea, and swam to an island.I was alone and frightened. Then, I looked for o food, and the island had food, water, and everything I needed."

4 Step Aheed

the man.

Another storm began. I saw a giant snake o in the waves of His body was gold and his eyes were bright blue. I fell down as he spoke."

'How did you get to this island?' said the snake.

I couldn't speak.' The snake put me in his mouth and took me to the place where he lived. He asked me again how I got to the Island, so I told him about the shipwreck e.



🕜 العبان ضخم

Slaobi . 🕖

🔞 دخامسمیله

و الجابية

الله عبول

क्रांक क्रांज

Cinal) &

Some-Lieu B

'Don't be frightened,' said the snake. 'You'll stay on the Island of for four months, and you'll be safe. Then people will find you and take you home. Be patient of, and you'll return to your family.'

Then the snake told me what happened to him.

Long ago, I lived on the island with my children and brothers.

A star fell, bringing a terrible fire on I was the only one to live. But I stayed strong and patient, and things became better on!

'Thank you,' I said. 'When I get home, I will send you many presents.' The snake laughed. 'I don't need your presents. I have everything I need here.'

'I was on the island for four months, then a ship came, just as the snake said. The snake gave me special presents to take home.'

Tell people in your city about me,' he said.

I returned to my family, gave the presents to the King, and he was pleased a So, listen to my story. I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe.'

The man heard the story, and smiled.

The moral of the tale

You should always be patient when something bad happen and be sure that the things will get better.

يجب عليك أن تكون دائمًا صبورًا عندما يحدث شيئًا سيئًا وكن على يمْين أن الأمور ستتحسن

# Exercises on Lessons (5) (6)

# 1) Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

# island - storm - journey - sailor

# 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. When the ship (sailed -sank moved), they all fell into the sea.
- The pilot -driver -sailor) works on a ship.
- 3. The (island -lake -pond) is a piece of land with water all around it.
- 4. When you are (azy -quick -patient), good things come to you.
- 5. He wasn't (frightened -successful -worried), so he was sad.
- My grandma always tells us a (book tale recipe) when we go to bed.
   Her stories are very interesting.
- 7. When the ship was (fixed -wrecked -repaired), the sailor couldn't return home.
- 8. We want to go on a (swim problem journey) to Turkey next summer vacation.
- 9. The (servant king prince) always does what his master wants him to do.
- 10. She was (frightened -successful -clever), so I told her to relax.

### 3 Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. island - you - How - this - did - get to?

**Uzren** 

- 2 other sailors many traveled The man with.
- s. worried Why man was important the?
- q the King for went I on a journey.
- s on the island How long servant the was?
- 6 will I you send presents many.
- 7. moral the of is What the story?
- Read the story again and complete the table:



an island in the sea / people come and bring the servant home /
a servant goes on a journey, but he is shipwrecked and meets a strange
snake / the servant, the snake / the servant wants to go home, but he
can't / I was in a terrible place, but now I'm safe

A good story has		Examples		
characters	the servant,			
setting				
a plot		,	,	
conflict				
resolution		, , ,		





- A family is traveling to see the Abu Simbel Sun Festival, but they
  have a problem on the journey.
- 2. A brother and sister want to decorate eggs for Sham El-Nessim, but they don't have any paint.
- A brother and sister are visiting a new part of Egypt, and they don't know if they will like the food.

# 69 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Younes:

Tell him about the story you read in the library last week. Tell him the title of the story and your favorite character in it. Was the story interesting or not? Your email address is <a href="mailto:youssef@school.net">youssef@school.net</a>. Your friend's email is <a href="mailto:younes@hotmail.com">younes@hotmail.com</a>.

From:		
To:		
Subject:		



82

Step Ahed





Listen and circle the correct answer:



(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. You can see the temples of Abu Simble near (Sohag Giza Cairo Aswan).
- 2. People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival (once twice three times four times) a year.
- 3. There are (four five six seven) statues inside the temple.
- 4. People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on (January February March April) 22<sup>nd</sup>
- Listen and complete:



(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (246) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. A.............. Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table.
- Egyptians are very
- 4. Egyptians are very happy when you ask for more

# B Reading (11Ms)

Read and complete the dialouge with the words from the box: (3Ms)

#### dish - share - delicious - recipes

Aya : You have lots of different meals in your book, Grandma!

Grandma : Yes, I do. I often • ...... recipes with family

and friends.

83

Connect Plus 4

Grandma : Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, too!

Aya : Hmm, that's difficult. There are so many recipes to

choose from.

Grandma : Don't worry. It will be easy. What would you like to make?

Aya : I like to try new things. These look . . . . .

Grandma : OK! Let's start now.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ma)

Eld Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends.

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for (three four five six) days.
- At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a (bird horse hen sheep).
- B Answer these questions:
  - 3. What do people eat at Eid Al-Adha?
  - 4. What do people wear at Eid Al-Adha?

# C The Reader (Shipwrecks)

# 5) A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. A volcano destroyed the temple of Amun.

2. The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that the divers found.

- Step Aheed

(4M4)

### Choose the correct answer:

- The ship was waiting in the (street port sirport station) next to the temple of Amun.
- Lots of ships use the (Dead Mediterranean Red Caribbean) Sea.

  (D) Writing (IIMs)

### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- Men and women often (are wearing wear wears doesn't wear) galabeya.
- 2 Today, I (talk talks doesn't talk am talking) to Dr Samir.
- 3. She (celebrate don't celebrate is celebrating celebrates) her wedding day on the fourth of July every year.
- 4 What does he (eat eats ate eating) for lunch?

# 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

(2Ms)

1. often - jewelry - Ancient - beautiful - wore - Egyptians.

2 now, - What - Heba - doing - you - are?

2

# 8 Write an email of (40) words to your British friend Tom: (5Ms)

Tell him about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. What does it celebrate? When does it happen? What do people do at Eid Al-Adha? How do you celebrate Eid Al-Adha with your family? Your email address is <a href="mailto:ahmed@hotmail.com">ahmed@hotmail.com</a>. Your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:tom@yahoo.com">tom@yahoo.com</a>.

	 **************************************
From:	
To:	
Subject:	
*************************	 
41717 100117414000000011400000	INDIGETIALIST CIOLIS ALACIN AN EXPISIONIS S. H. C. S. INIGERAL
Marine Control of the	

Connect Plus 4 +

Theme (3) My society



Olar antale fu iftika.



#### in this unit I will ....

- read about my cultural heritage.
- read a story about cultural artifacts.
- revise past simple verbs.
- form and use past continuous verbs.
- listen to information about tourism and archaeology.
- learn about and draw bar charts.
- write notes for an object in a museum.
- write a report about an archaeological site.

#### Objectives

	Cultural heritage: agriculture, ancient Egypt, archaeologist, calendar, civilization, cruise, identity, irrigation, monument, site, temple
Vocabulary	Cultural artifacts: board game, bury, carve, clay, counter, engraving, mask, perfume, pottery, tool, vase
	Drawing bar charts: bar chart, horizontal, vertical
Language	- Akil and Ottah were happy Sara saw a senet game The children were playing a game - The archaeologist was digging when she found an old box. Sequences: first, then, next, finally
Reading	A text about heritage: a story about an ancient game; fact files about museum artifacts
Writing	Interesting facts about ancient artifacts; a report about an archaeological 5/10
Speaking	Talking about famous sites in Egypt and what you can see there
Listening	A description of traditional agriculture in Egypt; a text about tourism and archaeology in Egypt
Life skills	Critical thinking: understanding the importance of cultural heritage
Values	Appreciation of science
fsaues and challenges	Citizenship
Integrated cross- curriculum topics	Math: bar charts

# What is heritage?

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary

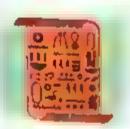




heritage تراث



identity



civilization حضارة



temples معابد



monuments



museum متدف



traditions تقاليد



unique art فن فرید (ممیز)



archeologists علماء أثار



historian ، مۇرخ



historical sites calendar مواقع تاریخیة



نتيجة - تقويم



agriculture / الزراعة



form - plant - grow; soil



تربة



fertile - rich خصبة











flooding season موسم الفيضان

growing season, موسم الزراعة

hervesting season erops

محاصيل

### Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافية

growth	نمو	interested in	محتم د - شغوف د
fields	حقول	proud of	יבפר ו
flood (v)	يفيض	advanced	وتقدم
lead to	يؤدت إلى - يقود إلى	objects	alus.
store safely	يخزن بأمان	system	مناتم
during	خلال - أثباء	connected to the	Nile النبل

# Conjugation of Verbs

### 

<b>Prése</b>	nto	Past	A CR	sent	Pasi
develop	يطور	developed	enjoy	تستميع ن	enjoyed
flood	يفيض	flooded	carry	يحمل	carried
last	يستمر	lasted	dance	پرقص	danced
farm	الأزع	farmed	Include	بشلد بلمتشر	included
plant	المراع	planted	store	يخزن	stored
connect	يرلبط	connected	explore	پستکشف	explored

#### Lesson 1

### الأفعال غير المنتظمة العناد المنتظمة الأفعال عبر المنتظمة

<b>mPro</b>	esent	Pasco	_ A @Pre	sento.	Past
lead to	الوُدِي إلى	led to	come	փնչ	came
grow	મંતર	grew	build	ψ <u>i</u> ii	built
cut	يقطع - يحمد	cut	<b>See</b>	Uyj	saw
dig	يحفر	dug	know	أعاض	knew

# Read and learn

### Did you know?

### مل تعلم؟

The Rosetta stone is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other languages that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient Egypt.

حجر رشيد هو شيء مميز والذب ساعد الناس أن يفهموا اللغة الهيروغليفية. كان مكتوبًا عليه نفس الكلمات بلغتين أحرتين واللتين استطاع الناس قراءتهما؛ لذلك استخدموا هذه الكلمات لترجمة اللعة الهيروعليفية. وهذه هي إحدى الطرق التي علمتنا عن الجياة في مصر القديمة.

### My heritage

A country's heritage • is an important part of its identity•. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects• from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture• and some of the first calendars•.



(GIG) O

Algan) (

Glight

🚺 (طوروا الزراعة)

(اللكو-اولان)

Archaeologists have learned lots of Interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, did you know that the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing? I'm very proud of my heritage.

### Egypt's agricultural heritage

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil of more fertile of this is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth of in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.





### The three seasons of farming

#### The flooding season a

from June to September. The fields were full of water for four months.



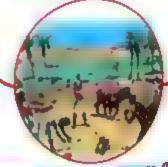
### The growing season

from October to
February. The water
went away and the soil
was rich and fertile.
Farmers planted lots of
different crops.



#### The hervesting season

from March to May.
Farmers cut the crops
and stored them
safely before the Nile
flooded again.



وُلُوْسَمُ الْفَيِمَانَ 🐧 (مُوَسَمُ الْزِرَاعُيُّ 🕜 وَبُوسِمِ الْحَمَانُ



# Exercises on Lesson

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

objects - traditions - heritage - country

A country's 

A country's 

Countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and 
Heritage includes art, buildings, and 
from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

# season - fertile - heritage - Nile

Omar: Hi, Ali. What are you doing?

All : Hi, Omar. I'm reading a book about agriculture in ancient Egypt.

Omar : Great! I know that agriculture is an important part of Egypt's

All : Sure. The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River 2

Omar: How did the farmers use the Nile in agriculture?

All : The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more

This is why ancient Egyptians could

farm the land.

### Choose the correct answer:

1 A/An country's (heritage - calendar - agriculture) is an important part of its identity.

2. Heritage includes art, buildings, and objects from the (past - future - present).

Archaeologists have learned about the civilization of ancient Egypt by (including - developing - exploring) many historical sites.

The Nile used to (flood - store - plant) every year, making the soil more fertile.

The seasons of farming in ancient Egypt were (connected - developed - flooded) to the Nile.

Farmers cut the crops and stored them safely in the (flooding - growing

- harvesting) season.

- 7. We use a (calendar temple site) to see what day, month or time of year it is.
- 8. A (heritage civilization archaeologist) is a large group of people who have their unique art, music, science, etc.
- 9. You can learn about how people lived in the past by visiting (museums, fields farms).
- 10. (Historians Archaeologists Tourists) find out more monuments from time to time.
- Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

  crops flooded growing June to September March to

  May October to February

The ancient Egyptians were able to farm the land because of the River Nile. Every year, the Nile • . . . during the flooding season.

The Egyptians couldn't farm the land because the fields were full of water. The flooding season lasted from 2

After the flood water went away, the soil was fertile and good for farming.

This was the 
season. It lasted from

During this time, farmers planted their crops. They dug canals to carry water from the river to the fields.

During the harvesting seasons, farmers cut and stored their 9

5 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

A country's heritage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Hentage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing (hotels museums remples).
- The ancient Egyptians developed some of the first (clocks calendars watches).

िट्टिक र

- Step Aheed

Answer th	ese questions	<b>5</b> 2			
Why is heril	age important	?			
what does	heritage includ	le?	* 14 737 447 * 7		
dr at plaistadiant	, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,				
Order the	words to ma	ke correct	sentences	:	
	ypt's - I'm - in -				
to formare	. What a in a		to to t		
00 - lattilera	- What - in - g	ow - Egypt.	7		2
like - I - musi	eums - visiting	- my paren	ts - with.	,	•
*** ***********		******* *******************************	*** ******** *******		
of writing - a	system - deve	loped - And	lent - Egyptia	ans.	
sites - you - \				, .	•
******************	would - Which	- to visit - lii	ke?	* *************************************	?
*****************	would - Which	- to visit - lii	ke?	ing.	?
to - the Nile -	would - Which were connect	- to visit - lil ted - seasor	ke? ns - The farm		?
to - the Nile -	would - Which	- to visit - lil ted - seasor	ke? ns - The farm		?
Write an e	would - Which were connect mail of (40) y out Egypt's he	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this	Jack:	
Write an e	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypt	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build?	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Write an e Tell him at What did th develop ac	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypticulture? You	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Write an e Tell him at What did th develop ac friend's en	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypt	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Write an e Tell him at What did th develop ac	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypticulture? You	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Write an e Tell him at What did th develop ag friend's en	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypticulture? You	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Write an e Tell him ab What did th develop ag friend's en From: To:	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypticulture? You	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Tell him ab What did the develop ac friend's en	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypticulture? You	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians
Write an e Tell him ab What did th develop ac friend's en	would - Which were connect mail of (40) to out Egypt's he e ancient Egypticulture? You	- to visit - lil ted - seasor words to y eritage. Wh otians build? ir email add	ke?  The farm  our friend  at does this  How did the a	Jack: heritage in	yptians

43.

# Lesson 2 An ancient game



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary الكلمات













Egyptian artifacts آثار (تحف) مصریة

rich people الأغنياء

, ordinary people أناس عادبين

hill



board game केन्द्री फोट एडर्री केंग्री



wooden box مندوق خشس



squares on the top unic'il unic vilayo



counters أشكال

#### Evtra Vocabulary

analogicalog

### Prepositions

The last of the la		
look after	پوتنۍ پ walk away	ينعد - يمشي بعيدًا
look up	fly away يرضع نظره	إلطير بعيدًا
look around	take out ينظر حوله	إنأزر
look at	wave at ينظر إلى	اللؤج بيده ز
look like	tum on یشبه - پیدو	وفلح جهاز

The following words are used to put sentences in order in a story.

🔾 الكلمات الأتية تُستخدم لترتيب الأحداث مُي القصة.



first	then أولاً - في البداية	لم
next	finally ثم - بعد ذلك	الخيرا

# Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs carmally leave

<b>APPERE</b>	nie	Past
JIL OWAY	וינואל - ויטק	walked away
play	يلعب	played
help	لساعد	helped
walk	بمشي	walked
look after	ាំ ណា្មតាំ	looked after
wonder	يتساءل	wondered

	sent 1	Past
Wave	يلوج - يشاور	waved.
move	يثحرك	rnoved
stop	يتوقف	stopped
Invent	يخترع	invented
study	يذاكر	studied
turn on	پفتح جهار	turned on

### irregular verbs | mbuali perilsali

Present		Rast	Rresent		Past
read	يقرأ	read	take out	يُخرچ	took out
do	يفعل	did	show	بطهر - بومح	showed
find	أتخد	found	sit	يجلس	sat
wear	ئازدى	wore	make	उठाँ - हार्मा	made
get	بجصل علم	got	have	רוף - אינס	had

### Read and learn

# An ancient game

Akil often helped his dad look after their goats. One day, he was sitting under a tree. It was a hot day, and he was tired. Then he saw his friend Ottah, and waved at him . Ottah was carrying a bag, and he looked happy when he saw Akil.





'Look, Akill My dad made me a game!' He showed Akil a long wooden box e with squares e on the top. The box had beautiful pictures on the side e. Next, he took out some counters o from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short.

'That looks fun! What do we have to do?' said Akil.

'We have to move the counters and see how far we can move. The winner o is the first to get all their counters off the board o. Let's play!'

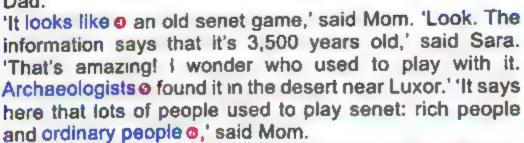
Ottah and Akli played happily under the tree. Then Akil looked up. 'Oh no!' he said. 'Ottah, where are my goats?'

Ottah and Akil looked around. The goats were walking away over a small

'Look, there they are!' Akil said. 'Quick! We have to get them!'

### What did Sara see in the museum?

Sara was in the museum o with her mom and dad. They were looking at Egyptian artifactso. There were lots of very old things and Sara was reading the Information of about each object. Finally, Sara stopped in front of a long wooden box. 'Mom, Dad, look at this!' she said. 'What is it?' asked Dad.



'Maybe children like me played with this game!' said Sara.



WEED O

0 **(2003)** 

A CHARLES

व्यक्ति ।

Citie 6

(auggles)

displace 6

و السعاديين

مل تعلم؟

### Did you know?

Senet is the world's oldest board game. Archaeologists found a senet game in Tutankhamun's tomb!

<sup>لعب</sup>ة السينت هي أقدم لعبة تلعب على لوحة. علماء الأثار وجدوا لعبة ر<sup>الس</sup>ينت في مقبرة توت عنخ أمون.

िटतका 2

- Step Ahead



# Grammar Study

زمن الماضيّ البسيط: The past simple tense إمن الماضيّ



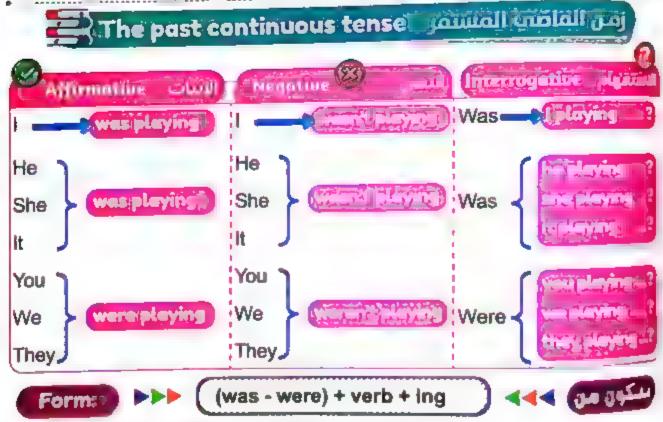
- Akil saw his friend Ottah.
- Ottah showed Akil a long wooden box.
- ▶ He took out some counters from his bag.
- Ottah and Akil played happily under the tree.
- We use it to express an action that happened in the past.
  - 🎩 يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.
- He looked happy when he saw his friend yesterday.
- We sometimes use some words with the past simple as:

Key words	📕 يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي،		
yesterday	in the past	في المافي	
ago	iast ( week )	الأسبوع الماضي	
in (date) (1990)	và one day - once	ر خات مرة - في يوم ما	

- He bought a postcard yesterday.
- She was a baby eight years ago.

Connect Plus 4 -

- In the negative form, we use (didn't) before the bare verb.
  - إ ننفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (didn't)، ثم الفعل في المصدر.
  - She didn't wear her new dress yesterday.
  - Noha didn't go to school because she was ill.
- In the interrogative form, we use (Did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.
  - الله عمل سؤال في الماضي البسيط, نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did). أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.
  - ▶ Did they go to a museum?
  - ▶ Did she buy a new game?
  - ▶ What did he do in the morning?
  - ▶ What did you do last week?
- Yes, they did.
- No, she didn't.
- He went to school.
- U visited my grandmother.



- ▶ They were looking at Egyptian artifacts.
- Ottah was carrying a bag.
- ► The goats were walking away over a small hill.



- Step Aheed

We use it to express an action that was in the middle of happening at stated time in the past.

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمرًا حدوثه في الماضي (استفرق حدوثه فترة من الوقت).

Sara was reading the Information about each object.

He was sitting under a tree.

In the negative form, we use (not) after (was - were).

ا عند النفي نضع (not) بعد (was - were).

They weren't playing football at two o'clock.

In the interrogative form, we use (was - were) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (verb + ing).

ا عند عمل سؤال نبدأ بـ (was\_were) أو نضع إحداهما بعد كلمة الإستفهام مع (ing +النيل)

OWhat were you doing yesterday? I was working in the garden. Owere they playing football?

No, they weren't.

### املحوظة هامة:

كيف نميز بين اختيار الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر.

الماضي المستمر يستخدم مع الأفعال التي تستغرق فترة من الوقت عند حدوثها مثل الأفعال: (....) sleep - rain - walk - study - play - wait



### عندما 🚃 When

النا ﴿ أَحِيانًا مَا يَسْتَخْدُمُ الْمَاضِي الْمُسْتَمَرِ لَلْتَعْبِيرِ عَنْ حَدَثُ كَانِ مُسْتَمِّرًا في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر. فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا نضعه في الماضي المستمر والحدث الذي قطعه نضعه في الماضي البسيط وأحيانًا ما تربط بينهما بالرابط (when)



### (حدث كان مستمر ًا وقطعه حدث آخر) ماضي مستمر ◄ ◄ ♦ ماضي بسيطً + (عندما) When﴿

The archaeologists were digging when they found an old box.

When the archaeologists found an old box, they were digging.

ا فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا هنا أن علماء الآثار كانوا يحفرون والحدث الذي قطعه أنهم وجدوا صندوق قديم.

We were having dinner when dad came back home.

When dad came back home, we were having dinner.

فالحدث الذي كان مستمرًا هنا أننا كنا نتناول العشاء والحدث الذي قطعه أن إلأب عاد للبيت.

# Exercises on Lesson (2

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### first - box - bag - counters

Akil and Ottah are friends. One day, Ottah showed Akil a long wooden

with squares on the top. The box had beautiful

pictures on the side. Next, he took out some 
from his bag. Seven were tall, and seven were short. They moved the

counters and saw how far they can move. The winner is the

to get all their counters off the board.

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### senet - museum - ordinary - artifacts

### 3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Farmers (grow grew grows) different crops in ancient Egypt.
- 2. They (enjoy are enjoying enjoyed) the party yesterday.
- 3. We (are learning learned learn) lots of useful things last week.
- 4. My uncle (came come comes) to our house at five. We were happy.
- 5. My friends and I (played play are playing) a board game last night.
- 6. She (doesn't isn't didn't) want to go to the park last Monday.



- Step Ahee

What did your sister (do - does - dld) yesterday? He didn't (went - going - go) out last weekend. (Are - Did - Does) All study math yesterday? 10. Did she (help - helps - helped) her mom last Saturday? (Lididn't (see - saw - sees) my friend Ahmed yesterday. They (is - was - were) playing a game. (was - were - are) carrying a heavy box. She (are - was - were) looking after her cat. Mhat (is - was - were) you doing at ten? We (was - were - Is) walking along the river last evening. 7. All (was - were - are) helping his dad wash the car. (8. Yasmin was (visit - visited - visiting) the museum yesterday. n. They were (wore - wear - wearing) their best clothes at the party last Friday. 20. The archaeologists (dig - dug - were digging) when they found an old box. gt I (studied - was studying - am studying) in the library when I saw Fares. 92 Mom (is making - made - was making) cookies when dad came home. 23. I (found - was finding - were finding) my lost pen. I was very happy. 24 (was stopping - were stopping - stopped) to talk to my neighbor Omar. 25. We (took - was taking - were taking) a photo of the bird when it flew away. Read and complete the text with the words from the box: found - learned - turned on - was playing - was reading saw - was sitting - was wearing - were looking Sara and her parents 0 . . . . . . . . at the Egyptian artifacts in the museum. Sara 2 ...... .... some information to her parents from the museum brochure. She 60 ....... that archaeologists often .....a senet game in Egyptian tombs with all the other artifacts. Sara wanted to find out more. First, she 👀 phone and started to look online. Then she found something interesting. She @ ...... a beautiful painting of Queen Nefertari, the wife of Ramses II. In the painting. Queen Nefertari 🤣 ........... a long white dress. She @ ...... on a chair of black and gold, and she o .....senetl

Term

102

# Lesson 3 Tourism and archaeology



(الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary









tools

masks

ا أونعة

perfume

برفان









أوانب فخارية



pots ﴿أُوانِي









tombs

engravings ، نقوشات paintings ، رسومات

cruise ، رحلة نهرية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

archaeological sites	مواقع أثريث <b>capital city</b>	العاصمة
popular sites	port مواقع هامة	ميناء
tourists	piece of stone	كتلة من الصخر
ncredible	لا يصدق carve (v)	فينحت "
much simpler	ابسط کثیرًا <b>bury (۷)</b>	إيدفن

### Important historical sites

اماكن تازيكية شامه

### (IE

Enggara

the Pyramids

the Step Pyramid الأهرامات

هرم زوسر المدرج

the Sphinx

أبو الهول

#### Alexandria

Luxor

the Roman Theater

Temple of Karnak المسرح الرومالي

معبد الكرنك

Qaitbay Citadel

المنعة فايتباب Valley of the Kings

وادب الملوك

مكتبة الإسكندرية Library of Alexandria

# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs adminitionally

A Pro	Sent 1	Post	Pre	sent	Past
visit	يزور	visited	decorate	يُزْيُّن - برخرف	decorated
want	بريد - برغب	wanted	carve	ينحت - ينفُش	carved
travel	يسافر	traveled	bury	يدفن	buried

# Definitions Manage A'B Activity

bury

: to put underground (تحت الأرض).

carve

: to cut using a sharp knife (سکينة حادة) or axe (بلطة).

cruise

: a holiday on a ship.

# Read and learn 4

# where can you see engravings?

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites a Tourists want to see the large monuments o, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible o to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations o in other countries were much simpler. Archaeologists o have found lots of artifacts



🕡 ر مواقع آثریت

و ألك

🔁 الايصدق

الثلاث 🙆

about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we و حضارات إِنْ عَلَمَادِ ﴿ وَا know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume. So, what are some of the most popular sites that tourists want to visit?

such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us

#### Gira :

🕜 أيوالهول Sometimes when people think about Egypt, they think of the 🚯 - نحلوه Pyramids and the Sphinx oat Giza. They are famous all over the world. Archaeologists think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They carved it ofrom one huge piece of stone.

### Saqqara

This is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many tombs a including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. Builders made this for King Djoser In about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest stone monuments.





#### Alexandria

There are lots of things to see in this port o city, including a Roman theatre, the old town, and Qaitbay Citadel. Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt. It had the first Library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world.

### Luxor

Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise . They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians burled their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt. What would you like to visit?

### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



				_
- A	orate -	ام انم		0.004
966	orate -	DIL - CI	IGIY - T	gue

They also made small pots for € . . . . . . or perfume.

2) Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

stone – Builders – tombs – King

Saqqara is one of the biggest sites in Egypt. It has many nincluding one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt. It has many made this for King Djoser in about 2630 BCE. It is the Step Pyramid, and it is one of the oldest monuments.

### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

: Hi, Ahmed. What are you doing? Hany

: Hi, Hany. I'm inviting my friends to a river O Ahmed

: Which city are you going to visit? Hany

Ahmed: We are going to visit @ ....

: What can we see there? Harry

Ahmed: The 6 ........... of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings.

: Great! Can I join you? Hany

Ahmed: Yes, of course.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Lots of people visit the archaeological (tourists sites boats) in Egypt every year.
- 2. Some (painters doctors archaeologists) have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases and masks.
- Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (cotton clay leather).
- 4. Ancient Egyptians used pottery (masks vases tools) to hold water and food.
- Ancient Egyptians made small pots for oil or (dresses perfume skirts).
- 6. Saggara has many (pots tombs vases) including one of the oldest pyramids in Egypt.
- 7. You can see the (Roman Theatre Sphinx Pyramids) in Alexandria.
- Many tourists visit Luxor for a Nile River (Journey cruise trip).
- 9. I visited the (Valley of the Kings Sphinx Qaltbay Citadel) in Luxor last year.
- 10. Ancient Egyptians (buried built visited) three kings in the Pyramids 🖼 of Giza.

- Order the words to make correct sentences:
  - 1. The Pyramids and Giza in are the Sphinx.
  - 2. to do many tourists How Luxor travel?
    - •
  - 3. is the biggest sites one of in Egypt Saqqara.
  - 4. cruise from Many tourists visit Luxor a Nile River.
  - 5. engravings you can + see Where?

  - 6. visit What like would to you?
- Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:

#### "Alexandria"

### pideas to helpiyoui

- ▶ Where is it?
- Its history and importance.
- ▶ What is it famous for?
- lts popular sites.

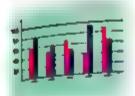




# Lesson 4 Math



الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



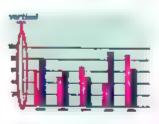
bar chart پیالیا صنا

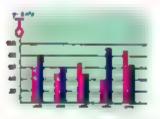


horizontal waje - waoi



**x-axis** محور ال س





**y-exis** محور ال ص



line خط-سطر

### Extra Vocabulary

र्वाद्यक्षिल विकास

international Museum E	Day design (v)	يصمم
exhibitions	المعروضان <b>plan (v)</b>	يخطط
project	egيشم <mark>decide</mark>	إيقرر

Definitions SB Students

: the line across the bottom.

y-axis : the line that goes up.

# Conjugation of Verbs

# irregular verbs Taakitali jie jisabil

Present		Present		Past	
put	ويئرا	put	show	يَظهِر - يُبَيِّن	showed
сап	يستطيع	could	tell	يَخبر	told
go up ای دیکون راسیا	برتمُع (بصعد) لأعا	went up	hold	يحتفظ ب	held
go across		went across	get	يَحمر	got



## What does Adam have to show?

Adam was doing his school project. 'This is a really interesting project, Mom!' he said. 'What do you have to do?' she asked.



We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things, and we have to show which the most popular exhibition is.'

'OK, so what are you going to put in your museum 6?' Mom asked.

'Let me think,' said Adam. 'Maybe a room about art, and one about games.

Can you help me to plan it 9?

'Ok! Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!' said Morn.



CHIEGOTIAN ()

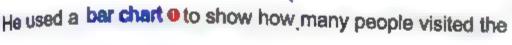
CANDOUGO O

Shadud 6



## What's an exist

Adam wanted to show the most popular exhibition in his museum.



exhibitions. The line across the bottom is calle the x-axis of it

is horizontal . The x-axis here shows the different exhibitions.

The y-axis o is the line that goes up. It is vertical o. The y-axis here shows the number of visitors on one day in July.



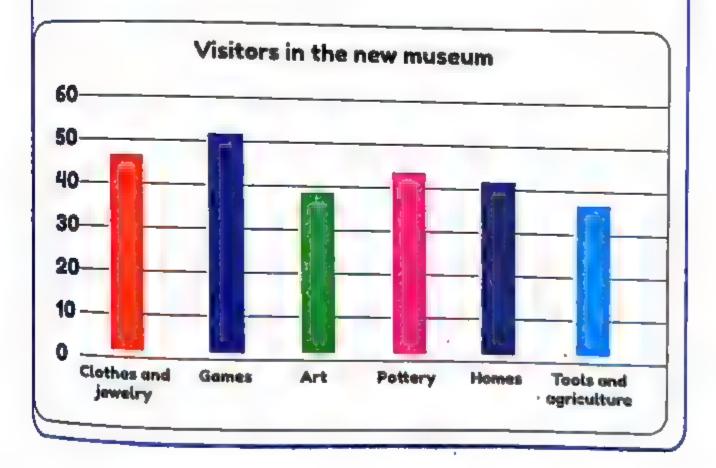
THURSDO O

( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( )

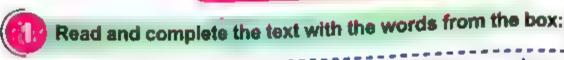
prince poor B

O Secolular

(Augus) (5



# Exercises on Lesson 4





bar chart - Day - design - exhibition - show

Adam is learning about international Museum 0

For

his school project, he has to 2

a new museum and

say what is in it. Then he has to 6

which is the most

popular 0

. He decides to do this using a 9

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box

## games - project - play - design

Mom : What are you doing, Adam?

Adam : I'm doing my school 1 ..... ... ....

Mom : What do you have to do?

Adam : I have to 9 ... a new museum and say what is in it.

Mom : What are you going to put in your museum?

Adam : Maybe a room about art or . . . . . . . . . . . . . Can you help me

to plan it?

Mom : Sure. Let's get your paper, colored pens and a ruler!

### Read again and complete the sentences:



1. The line that goes across the bottom is ....... ........ . It is called the



112

- Step Aheel

order t	ne words to make correct sentence	8:

1 doing -Adam - was - project - school - his.

g, you - have - do - to - do - What?

s, in your museum - put - you - are - What - going to?

a exhibition - most - had - Which - visitors - the?

## 5 Write an email of (40) words to your friend Amgad:

4 11 1001 Nabeles & Statisticolist of toolistic electronic electro

Tell him about your school project about the International Museum Day. What do you have to do? What are you going to do in your museum? What do the exhibitions show? Your email address is adam@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is amaad@school.net.

From:	

To:

Subject:

Uzru

Connect Plus 4 -

113

### Unit 9

# Lesson 5-6 Writing & project



# الكنمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



phorooh ogeo



solar boat قارب شمسي



gold mask مناع ذهبی



skies Glglamit



limestone ججر جیری



death الموت



محتون uewsbaber



report (n) يَوْرِير

## Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافين

## Question Words

What	Which ما - ماذا	V1
Where	را Who	)ô
When	How ary	كيف
What time	How old متم (تسأل عن الساعة)	מם عمر
Why	الماذا How big	عاديم

## Conjugation of Verbs

### Regular verbs anhiolly limit

Fres	ent l	Past	Present	Paso
add	يضيف	added	تخدم - پستعمل 9su	used used
belong to	ينتمي إلى	belonged to	complete Ja	completed i
believe	يُصَدِّق	believed	introduce a	នៃ introduced

## Read and learn

### Did you know?

رمل تعلم؟

The Grand Egyptian Museum has more than 5,000 items that belonged to the Pharaoh Tutankhamun المتحف المصرى الكبير يحوي أكثر من 5,000 قطعة تخص الفرعون توت عنخ آمون.



### When you give information:

عندما تعطي معلومات:

- You often have to answer questions such as Who, What, When, Where, and How.
  - 1. فأنت في العالب تجيب على أسئلة مثل من، ما، متى، أين وكيف،
- 2. You give facts, not opinions.
- 2 فأنت تعطى حقائق وليست آراء.
- 3. Facts can include names, dates, and places.
  - الحقائق من الممكن أن تشتمل على أسماء، تواريخ وأماكن.
- Then you can add more interest by giving extra information. This might not answer a Wh- question, but it is something that people might want to know.
  - 4. ثـم يمكــك إضافة إهتمام أكثـر بتقديـم المريـد مـن المعلومـات. والمعلومـات الإضافيـة لـن تكـون إجابـة عـلى الأســئلة البادئـة بـأداة إســثفهام ولكنهـا شــيئًا مـا ريمـا يـود النـاس معرفتـه.

### These are the museum notes.

### Status of Amenhotep III

What is it? the statue of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters

How old is it? about 3,400 years old

What is it made of? Limestone

How big is it? 7 meters tall, 4.4 meters wide

Where is it from? Luxor

### Pharaoh Khufu!s:solar boat\*

What is it? a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's tomb

How old is it? about 4,600 years old What is it made of? Wood How big is it? 42 meters long Where is it from? Giza



What is it? a gold mask How old is it? over 3,000 years old What is it made of? gold How big is it? 54 cm tall Where is it from? The Valley of the Kings







## Exercises on Lessons (5) (6)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

tomb - solar - ancient - boat

The Pharaoh Khufu's solar is a very famous monument.

It's a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's @

lt's

called a solar boat because 6 . Egyptians believed that it

would take the person across the skies after death.



## Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: limestone – gold – old – statue : Could you tell me the name of this statue, please? Tourist Tour gulde: Sure. It's the 0 .... of Amenhotep III, his wife Tiye and their three daughters. : How @ ......ls It? Tourist Tour guide: It's about 3,400 years old. : What is if made of? Tourist Tour guide : It's made of 10 ............ : Where is it from? Tourist Tour guide: It's from Luxor. Order the words to make correct sentences: Lis - of - What - made - it? 2.has traveled - countries - other - to - mask - This. 3.is - Where - from - statue - the? 4 old - the - mask - How - is? 5. is - in - This - statue - the largest - Egypt. 6 oldest - is - Which - the - artifact? Write a report on the following topic:

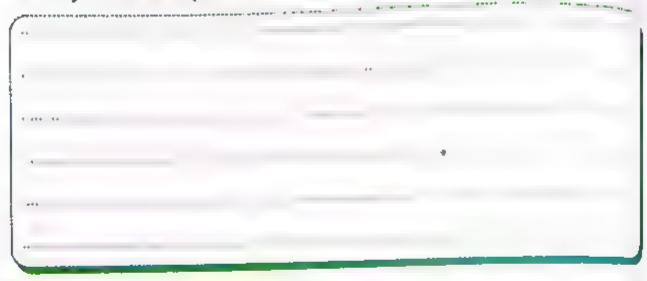
Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amazing site. This is a very old city and nobody knew it was there.

1. When did archaeologists find this?



### Unit 9

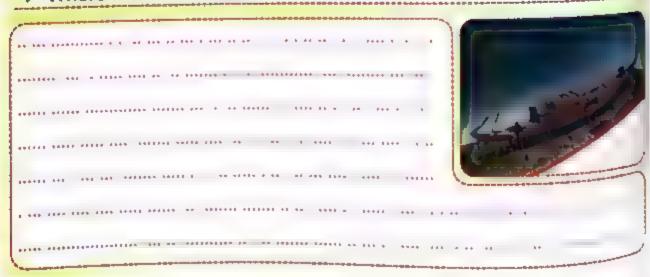
- 2. Where is it?
- 3. What did they find?
- 4. Why is this an important site?



Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:
"Pharach Khufu's solar boat"

### ► ideas/to help/wwith

- ▶ What is it? a wooden boat found in Pharaoh Khufu's tomb
- ▶ How old is it? about 4,600 years old
- What is it made of? Wood
- ► How big is it? 42 meters long
- ▶ Where is it from? Giza



िलका १



Connect Plus 4 .

119

# Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4M8)

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing. I'm very proud of my heritage.

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I'm very interested in Egypt's (traditions seasons foods heritage).
- 2. I visit (museums temples tombs schools) to learn about the things people did in the past.
- Answer these questions:
- 3. How did archaeologists learn about the civilization of ancient Egypt?
- 4. What did the ancient Egyptians develop?

## C The Reader (Shipwrecks)

## 5 A-Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal.
- 2. You have to be good at surfing to visit a shipwreck.
- Choose the correct answer:
- There are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it (safe - nice - easy - dangerous). Sometimes ships hit the reefs and sink.
- 4. People come from all over the world to go wreck (swimming diving surfing - fishing) in the Red Sea.



### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

- 1. They (decorate decorates decorated was decorated) their house for yesterday's party.
- 2. Mom (was were is are) making special cookies for the feast last night.
- 3. It was a hot day, so they were (drink- drank- drinks- drinking) some cold water.
- 4. The archaeologists (explored are exploring explore were exploring) a site when they found amazing artifacts.

### 7 Order the words to make correct sentences:

(2Ms)

- 1.see can You engravings the temples in.
- 2.famous the world Which over is all library?
- 8 Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements: (5Ms)

### "Tutankhamun's mask"

### ▶ Ideas so help your

- ▶ What is it? a gold mask
- ► How old is it? over 3,000 years old
- ► What is it made of? gold
- ► How big is it? 54 cm tall
- ► Where is it from? The Valley of the Kings



Connect Plus 4 -

121

Theme (4) I'm a responsible person



Integrated cross-

curriculum topics

Connecting the world الانصال بالعالم



- explore different means of communication.
- learn words connected to social media.
- understand and use should and shouldn't in sentences.
- read a story about social media.
- write a letter to a school newspaper.
- Risten to a podcast about technological solutions.
- pian a new social media platform only for kids.

ICT: keyboard skills

### Objectives

Means of communication: blog, instant message, electronic device email, presentation, social, vlog, media account, social media platform, website  Technology: electric car, scrubber, smog-free tower
<ul> <li>You should check your work.</li> <li>You shouldn't forget punctuation</li> <li>Punctuation marks: periods, commas and question marks.</li> <li>I don't have any free time today, but I am free this weekend.</li> <li>She doesn't like reading or writing.</li> <li>I like poetry and fiction.</li> </ul>
A story about someone using social media; a letter to an editor
A letter to the editor of a school newspaper
Giving advice about how to write a story; suggesting solutions to the problems of pollution; giving a presentation about how technology can help air pollution; planning a new social media platform for kids
your own story; a podcast about different technological solutions to
Verbal and non-verbal Communication: Identifying forms of communication
Honesty, integrity
Giobalisation

# Means of communication

الكلمان الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary





means of communication وسائل التواصل



social media platforms منصات التواصل الإجتماعي



, digital form شکل رممی



instant message (iM)



, private message رسالة خاصة



electronic devices أحهرة إعكتروس



personal website موقع شخصی



access websites يدخل على المواقع



smoke signals إشارات بالدخان



presentation برص تعدیمی



email برید الکترونی



**account** حسان



blog åigao



مدونة فيديو مدونة فيديو



### Extra Vocabulary.

كلمات إضافية

send letters	يرسل خطابات	users	مستخدمين
share information	يتشارك المعلومات	belong to	بنتمي إلى - يخص
topie		post information	پرسل معلومات
World Wide Web	شبكة الإلترنت العالميا	regularly	بالنظام

Definitions

viog : a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts short videos

a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts written articles.

email : a digital letter.

website : a set of pages on the internet about a person or a

business.

presentation : a way to share information with other people by talking

about it.

électronic device : a form of technology such as a smartphone, tablet, or

laptop.

## Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs actional jiwalii

A Pires	ent_l	A Rost	A	Sent	Past
access 'd	پدخل <mark>(این - بصل</mark> (موقع اِنکتروس	accessed	plan	يُخْطُط	planned
post y	ينشر منشور عله التواصل الاجتماع	posted	explore	يستكشف	explored
belong to	ينتمي إلى	belonged to	use and	يستخدم - يست	used
start	يبدأ	started	share	يشارك	shared
explain	يُؤمِّح	explained	communi	يتواصل cate	communicated

### Lesson 1

مأ الأفلاد

ما حماد

# irregular verbs and that planty

Present		Pasis	- Dr		And the second second
understand	بفهم	understood	say	lot.	said
write	یکتب	Wrote	send	يمُول زرسِل	sent
	أهره - أ	knew	see	ולה	saw

## Read and learn



More than 4 billion people use different types of social media around the world. This number is increasing every year.

أكثر من 4 مليار شخص حول العالم يستخدمون أشكال محتلمة للتواصل الإحتماعي، وهذا العدد يتزابد كل عام.

### Did you know.

Ancient Egyptians used carrier pigeons to send messages to each other.

كان المصربون القدماء يستحدمون الحمام الراجل لإرسال رسائل إلب بعضهم النعض

### Means of communication

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication o? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals @ or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology ke electronic devices to help us send messages.

An email is a digital form o of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

An instant message o (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platformo. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.



- 🕕 روسائل اللواصل
- والمدارات بالدخاق
- 🕒 طحهزة البكارونية
  - Chagli Asin (
- 🚯 طريسالة العاذلة)
  - و العلطات
  - ﴿ (اِسْأَلُوْ جُامِتُهُ)

A presentation o is a way to share information with others. When you give a presentation, you share information about something thotage spic 8 or explain something by talking about it.

A website is a home page on the World Wide Web. Websites are usually about one topic. Users can access o websites from different electronic devices like smartphones @, tablets, and laptops.

Crite Jan 9 المحوالف ذكيت ( digso) ()

A blog to is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for

رُا (مُدولة فَرِدَيْقَ) را والموص المكتوبة:

others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog E is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written texts .

### Listenino

### Teacher:

ومتداقية

When you read blogs, watch vlogs, or take information from websites, it's very important to decide how reliable 0 the information is.

و (ثاريخُ المحتوى

First, look at the date of the material 9. You don't want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect o now.

الم المحيد)

(23) ()

(III) (I

Make sure o you think about the person who created the

و (منع المحتوس

material o Is she or he an expert o or a professional o, or just someone giving their opinion o? Basically o, you want to get facts Check Vocabulary from experts. So, if they are using phrases like "I guess" or "I feel," they are probably & just giving their opinion.

(محترف)

🖯 (بدون رابهم

و (فَتِ الأساس)

و (من المحتمل

ال (قراجعة الحقالق)

You can also use special websites that are used for checking facts . There are a lot of different ones online, and they can help you decide what true and what's not. Ask your teacher which ones you should use.

126

- Step Ahead

## Exercises on Lesson (1



## Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Means of 0 .... are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke 2 ... or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like 6 devices to help us send messages.

### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### birds - technology - devices - messages

Tamer: Do you know what are the means of communication?

from All

one place to another.

Tamer: What did people use to send messages in the past?

: They used smoke signals or 2 ..... All

Tamer: What do people use today to send messages to each other?

All

Tamer: Thanks, Ali.

: You're welcome. All

## Choose the correct answer:

Laptops, tablets and smartphones are (vlogs - emails - electronic devices).

2 A (vlog - blog - website) is a personal website or social media account 🚾 where someone regularly posts short videos.



### Unit 10

- 3. A (website vlog blog) is a personal website or social media account where someone regularly posts written articles.
- 4. An (account -email -website) is a digital letter.
- 5. A (vlog -presentation -website) is a set of pages on the internet about a person or a business.
- 6. A (blog presentation vlog) is a way to share information with other people by talking about it.
- An (email -website -electronic device) is a form of technology such as a smartphone, tablet, or laptop.
- Emails and websites are means of (communication education).

## Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Do you know what we are talking about when we say means of communication? These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.

### Choose the correct answer:

- Means of communication are different ways to send (conversations messages greetings) from one place to another place.
- 2. You must have an email (form -keyboard -account) to send emails.

## Answer these questions:

- 3. How could people send messages in the past?
- 4. How do people send messages today?



Lesson 7
Order the words to make correct sentences:
4 do - Why - people - presentations - give?
10,00,01701 4011/0111040111040110401104011041041041041041
2 devices - electronic - use - We - send messages - to.
\$ ************************************
send - can - you - an - Where - instant message?
4. website - of - kind - a special - is - A blog.
5, people - access - can - How - websites?
(1101746161675 7 4* 15 *111 7 Ar an a c projecteroscolores a da des acas de descente de la critario del critario de la critario de la critario del critario de la critario del la critario de la critario
Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:
"The means of communication I use"
▶ldeas to help you:
► Facebook ► Twitter ► Instagram ► WhatsApp ► Telegram
F
THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T
IIIII II(II)/)TISIADII-II(ASII(SII))(ISSI)SIIT(ISDIT(ISIASII)ISSITIASIIS SIISIISIITE VIISIITEN V. A.
Typhildeli)ialaiátieoiaoiieiiieiijadiaoijeileejhelyelab abableblyjýleb álliathelalab éldelelleleti m m hm mt bttlelladetlada

# Lesson 2 Giving advice

Main Vocabulary الكئمات الأساسية في الدرس



adventure čjalša



touch type يكتب علم لوحة المفاتيح بسرعة جدًا



, **keyboard** لوحة مفاتيح



writer

Stip



publish (مقالاً-کتابًا) پنشر (مقالاً-کتابًا)



prepare يُعِد-يُجهِز



ِ backpack حقيبة تُحمل على الظهر



incredible لايمدق - مُدهِش

### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

word processor	معالج الكلمات <b>adult</b>	أشخص بالغ
writing program	checklist برنامچلاکتابة	āa
spelling mistakes	break (n) أخطاء هجاء	ُوْدة- ا <mark>ستراحة</mark>
sit up straight(puāima)	local newspaper بجلس معتدلًا (بشکر	مصومحلية

## Conjugation of Verbs

### Regular verbs विक्रियावी पृथ्विम

Present	Rást	Litt	sent	Past
open up		want	يريد - يرغب	wanted
hand to عطری شیئا لشخص فری یده	handed to	prepare	يُحَضَّر - يُجَهِّز	prepared

### Lesson 2

@Present	Past
touch type	touch typed
correct عِثْمَةً	corrected
publish (بعقالا - كتابا)	published '
remember נַזֹּגֹעָן	remembered

Presentin		Past
hand	استم	handed
practice	بتدڑب	practiced
change	يُفيْر	changed
check	يفحص - يراجع	checked

## الأمعال غير المنتظمة العامة الامعال عير المنتظمة

(Present	Past
iet یَدَع (بِتَرِك) شخصًا بِمُعَلِ شِبِنًا	let
<b>hurt</b> វូវគ្គំវេញ - ប្រង់ធ្វីវ	hurt
get home يصل (يعود) للمنزل	got home
get better يتحش	got better
sit up straight يجلس معتدلًا (بشكل مستقيم)	sat up straight

(Présenti)	Past
take a break یادد استراحه	took a break
(معتدة (توهد شيَّة الجلامة) أعتدة (توهد شيَّة الجلامة)	meant
keep ئىقىپ بچعل	kept
tell يُخبِر	told
forget بنست	forgot



### Read and learn

### What does Adam love to do?

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his backpack o, and opened up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great adventure o around Africa.





والمدالظم

CIOIAL O

Carried and the Control of the Contr

Adam's mom is a writer at the local newspapers. She got home at 6 o'clock.

### Unit 10

'Hi Mom,' Adam said. 'Do you want to read my new story?'

'Of course I do, honey.'

Adam handed to his notebook to his mom. She sat down and started reading it. After a while, she said, 'This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people read it.'

'What do you mean?' Adam asked.

ावुम्बद्धी जोह बिह्या 🛭

'You know, you should prepare it to share with others.'

و رئينت أو طقرت المرات أو طقرت

'OK, but how do I do that, Mom?'

و (الأرافا)

'First you should touch type it.'

(قَالَمَةُ)

'OK, we're learning how to type at school. Is that when you try to type without always looking at the keyboard?

'That's right. It might sound of difficult, but if you practice, you'll get better and better at it. It's much quicker than writing with a pen, and it's easier to correct or change your work.'

"I can do that, Mom."

'Just remember to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. You don't want to hurt your neck or back o. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes.'

'Yes, that's what my teacher told us,' said Adam,

'Then, you can ask the school to publish to it in the school newspaper, or even publish it yourself online.'

His mom handed the notebook back to him. 'Look at the last page. I made a checklisto for you.'

## Didayounknow?

### مل تعلم؟

There are different words that are contractions in English. Shouldn't is one example; shouldn't = should + not.

يوجد كلمات في اللغة الإنجليزية تُكتب إختصارًا. كلمة (shouldn't) هي واحدة من هذه الكلمات.

## Publishing Checklist | mill adia

- You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a word processor or writing program, and try to touch type.
  - لا يجب أن تكتب قصتك بخط اليد، يجب أن تستخدم معالج كلمات أو برنامج للكتابة وحاول أن تكتب على لوحة المفاتيح بأسرع ما يمكن،
- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes. You should check your spelling. Or you should ask an adult to check it for you.
  - ◄ لا يجب أن يكون هناك أي أخطاء هجاء أو أخطاء نحوية. يجب أن تراجع الكلمات إملائيًا أو
     تطلب من شخص كبير أن يراجعها لك.
- You shouldn't forget punctuation. You should check your work.
  - ◄ لا يجب أن تنس علامات الترقيم. يجب أن تراجع ما كتبته.
- You shouldn't work too long without a break. And you should sit up straight with your feet on the floor.
  - ◄ لا يجب أن تعمل طويلاً بدون راحة. ويجب أن تجلس مستقيم الطهر وقدماك على الأرض،

# Grammar Study

Giving advice

اسداء النضح

should + inf. (المصدر)



- We can give advice by using (should). We use it to talk about things that are good for us to do.
  - يمكن إسداء النصح باستخدام (should) وتتبع بمصدر الفعل.
- This is an incredible story. You should let more people read it.
- You should prepare it to share with others.



## (المصدر) shouldn't + inf.



We can give advice by using (shouldn't). We use it to talk about things that are not good for us to do.

مكن إسداء النصح باستخدام (shouldn't) وتتبع بمصدر الفعل.

- You shouldn't work too long without a break. You should take a break every 10 or 15 minutes.
- You shouldn't hurt your neck or back.
- You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes.

## Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

adventure - backpack - hospital - newspaper

Adam got home from school, and sat down at his desk. He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his 
up his notebook. Adam loved to write. He was working on a new story about a boy who goes on a great 
Adam's mom is a writer at the local 
She always reads his stories and advices him how to write easily.

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

### Vocabulary

- 1. Adam's mom is a (doctor writer teacher) at a local newspaper.
- 2. (Touch typing Publishing Learning) is much quicker than writing with a pen.
- 3. You should sit up straight and keep your (hands feet arms) on the floor while writing.
- You should take a (break neck back) every 10 or 15 minutes while writing.
- 5. You shouldn't write your story by (word processor hand -writing program).

  It's a very old way.

पिटमका 2

134

-Step Ahead

## Complete the conversation with (should or shouldn't):



Fares : Hi, Tarek. What o

neighborhood greener?

Tarek : Hi, Fares. I think we o

bins. Everyone o

have more recycling

recycle their plastic bottles.

we do to make our

Fares: That's a good idea, but we need more garbage bins, too. People

drop garbage.

Tarek: Yes, that's really bad. Also, we o

trees. Then the streets would be cooler.

Fares: Trees clean the air, too. People o

trees.

cut down

, plant more

Tarek : I agree.

### Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)



- 1. You (should shouldn't) use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
- You (should shouldn't) choose a title for your story.
- 3. You (should -shouldn't) use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
- 4. You (should -shouldn't) ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
- 5. You (should shouldn't) be afraid to ask your teacher for help.
- 6. You (should shouldn't) hide your writing. Share it with your friends!

### What should and shouldn't you do on publishing something: (Grammar)



- 1. You (should shouldn't) write your story by hand.
- You (should -shouldn't) use a writing program.
- 3. You (should -shouldn't) try to touch type.
- 4. You (should shouldn't) check your spelling.
- 5. You (should -shouldn't) have any spelling or grammar mistakes.
- 6. You (should -shouldn't) ask a grown-up to check the spelling and grammar for you.
- 7. You (should shouldn't) check your work.

### Unit 10

- 8. You (should shouldn't) forget the punctuation.
- 9. You (should shouldn't) work too long without a break.
- 10. You (should shouldn't) sit up straight with your feet on the floor.

	THE RESERVE AND ADDRESS OF	<b>+</b>	
6	Order the words t	a make correct	gantances:
N -	ALCO HIG MOLOS [	O WISKS COLLEGE	90111-



- 1. a title You for should your story choose.
- 2 person's copy shouldn't You another work.
- 3. spelling and check your grammar should You.
- 4. story a friend should You ask to read your.
- shouldn't by hand your write You story.

6. your - on the - put - You - school website - should - story.

## Write an email of (40) words to your friend Radwa:

Tell her how to write a story. What should she do? What shouldn't she do? Should she write it by hand or use a word processor? Give her advice about the spelling and grammar mistakes and punctuation. Your email address is rank@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is radwa@yahoo.com.

From:

To:

Subject:

136

Step Ahede

## Lesson 3

## Reading



Main Vocabulary الدرس من الأساسية في الدرس









**jign up** پشترگ - ہفتح حساب

sign in (into) يسجل الدخول

cyberfriends أصدقاء الترنث

online عبر الإنترنت









مَثِينَاتِ مُعْلِينَةً مُعْلِينَاتِ مُعْلِينَةً

settings إعدادات · ضبط

account China

post videos ينشرمقاطعالمبديو

### Extra Vocabulary

### كلمات إضافيق

hobby	هواية	best friends	أعز الأصدقاء
photography	التصوير الموتوعرامي	social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي
private	شخصي - خاص	set up (an acc	eount) (باسع) ئىشئۇ
cool	طريف - لطيف	later	فيما بعد
make fun of	يسخر من	bell	چرس

## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs المنتظمة الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present		Past
المجل دخول (into) پَسَجُل دخول	signed in (into)	watch	يشاهد	watched
sign up يَسْجُل		talk	يتحذث	talked

Connect Plus 4

# الأفعال تغير المنتظمة @Irregular verbs

Pres	ent	Past	Pres	ent	Pastre
set up (an	account) ئلشہا (دسان	set up	ring	ing.	rang
make fun d		made fun of	go straight	to يذهب مباشر	went straight to
think	يُمْكُر	thought	speak	يتحدث	Spoke
feel	يشعر	felt	know	يعرف	knew



### Yourset goes online

The 2 o'clock bell rang. Youssef and his best friend Wael started walking home from school together.

'You're thirteen now, aren't you?' asked Wael.

'Yeah. Why?'

'That means you can sign up of for a social media account like me.'
Youssef thought about this idea for a minute. 'I guess of the little idea for a minute.'
I'll have to ask my parents first. What do you use your account for?'

'I post videos. I also made some cyberfriends online,' said Wael. 'But who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?' he asked. 'No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool!' 'I'll think about it. See you tomorrow!' said Youssef.

Youssef got home from school and his mom was in the kitchen. 'Hi, honey. How was school today?'

'Good! Mom, can I get a social media account? Wael has one and he says it's really cool.' Do you think you're old enough, Youssef?' 'Yes. And I need it for my group project.



पटनका 2

Youssel's dad helped him set up o his account after dinner. He went straight o to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Then he posted it.

the next morning, he signed into a his account. There were some comments of from people he didn't even know, and some of the comments were nasty of the comments of

4 الواسس- يوبيد

الماشق (

(كفارعان)

(تعلیقان

Signit (B

(المحادات فيند)

ال الشخصي - خاص

الله الملق

🕏 🐠 لا تشار الحج الدال

person said horrible things about the way Youssef spoke English, and someone else made fun of Youssef's hair and clothes. He felt really sad. Youssef told his morn about the bad comments. 'I think there are some things you need to learn about using social media,' she said. 'Sign into your account and go to the settings . First, we need to make your page private . That means only your friends can see your videos. Now, let's turn off . That way people can't say bad things about you. If you want, you can turn them back on later . 'Thanks, Morn. I'm going to make a new video now and see what happens.'

## Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

## signed - comments - posted - set

Youssef's dad helped him 

dinner. He went straight to his room and made his first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Into his account. There were some 

up his account after up his account after up his account after which is first video. He introduced himself and talked about his favorite hobby, photography. Into his account. There were some 

from people he didn't

even know, and some of the comments were nasty.

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box;

## sport - hobby - account - online

Youssef: Hi, Wael. Could you help me, please?

Wael : Hi, Youssef. Sure. What do you want?

Youssef: I want to open a social media ........

Wael : Why do you want a social media account?

Youssef: To post videos and make new friends 2 ........

Wael : What do you want to talk about in your videos?

Youssef: I want to talk about my favorite 6 ......

photography.

Wael : Okay. Let's open a social media account for you.

Youssef: Great!

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



### comments - photos - posted - private - social media - video

## Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. talked - favorite - He - about - hobby - his.

you - What - for - do - your account - use?  ?  !tothes - of - fun - made - Someone - Youssef's.  .a - account - Can - social media - get?  ?  ! our videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  s - Do - think - bad - social media - you?  ?  ! o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  eas to help your    Types of social media.	- What - for - do - your account - use?  - des - of - fun - made - Someone - Youssef's.  - account - Can - social media - get?  - videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  - Oo - think - bad - social media - you?  - need - private - We - your page - make.  - ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  - "Social Media"  - Types of social media.			<b>PL</b>		N.
a - account - Can - social media - get?  our videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  s - Do - think - bad - social media - you?  o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  out to help your page - Youssef's.	es - of - Tun - made - Someone - Youssef's.  - account - Can - social media - get?  videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  Oo - think - bad - social media - you?  need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help your  Types of social media.  providance.  Good and bad things about it.	you - What - for - do -	your account - use		esson 3	
_a - account - Can - social media - get?  //our videos - see - friends - your - can - Only,  s - Do - think - bad - social media - you?  ? o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  Types of social media.	- account - Can - social media - get?  videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  Do - think - bad - social media - you?  need - private - We - your page - make.  Ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help your  P Types of social media.  P Good and bad things about it.	1945-19474-1444-1941111111111111111111111111		***********	?	
- a - account - Can - social media - get?  /our videos - see - friends - your - can - Only,  s - Do - think - bad - social media - you?  /o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  eas to help your  // Types of social media.	- account - Can - social media - get?  videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  Oo - think - bad - social media - you?  need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help you:  Description:  Types of social media.  Description:  Good and bad things about it.	clothes - of - fun - mad	de - Someone - You	ssef's.		
/our videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  s - Do - think - bad - social media - you?  ? o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  eas to help yous  Types of social media.	videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  Do - think - bad - social media - you?  need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help yous  proportance.  Do only.  Types of social media.	account. Con	**** **********************************	************		
wite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  Types of social media.	videos - see - friends - your - can - Only.  Do - think - bad - social media - you?  ? need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  **Types of social media.**  **Dood and bad things about it.**	.a-account-Can-				
s - Do - think - bad - social media - you?  o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  • Types of social media.	Do - think - bad - social media - you?  ? need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help yous  proportance.  Do Types of social media.  proportance.  Do Good and bad things about it.	aur videos - see - frie			. ?	
write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  Types of social media.	need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help your page - make.  Docial Media"  Types of social media.  Good and bad things about it.					
o - need - private - We - your page - make.  Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  ► Types of social media.	need - private - We - your page - make.  ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help your page - make.  Types of social media.  portance.  Good and bad things about it.			/ 11+4+241)+/+41+41+4		
write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  Types of social media.	ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help yous  proportance.  Types of social media.  portance.  Good and bad things about it.				2	
Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  eas to help yous  Types of social media.	to help you:  Importance.    Social Media   Types of social media.		***************************************		r	
Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:  "Social Media"  eas to help yous  Types of social media.	ite a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  to help you:  Description of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  Types of social media.  Description of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  Types of social media.  Description of (40) words using the following guiding elements  "Social Media"  Types of social media.			0.		
	mportance.	Write a paragraph of			ding elemen	ts:
		Write a paragraph of	"Social Media		ding elemen	its:
		leas to help you>	"Social Media  ▶ Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	ts:
			"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
		leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
		leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	ts:
		leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
	**************************************	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
	***************************************	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
	***************************************	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
***************************************	***************************************	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
***************************************	14	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
***************************************	14	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:
	1	leas to help you>	"Social Media  ► Types of social	l media.	ding elemen	its:

# Writing



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



reports

poetry اشعر



high school المدرسة الثانوية



college

كُلية



تقارير

writing skills مهارات الكتابة



fiction قصة - رواية



free time وقت فراغ



global community مجتمع عالمت



create

**Improve** 

currently



perfect idea فكرة مثالية (رائعة)

Extra Vocabulary.

كماشاهافية

حالتا

fourth-grade student

ئنشئ

أطالب قي الصف الرابع

after-school club

يُدِي (أنشطة) ما بعد المدرسة

for fun

يُخسِّن

general الاستمتاع



# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs naturall discul-

di Preser	160)	Past
ioin	ينضم	Joined
finish oo usal	أينهي - يا	finished
create	ثنشما	created

C Pre	Sent	Past
improve	يُحَسِّن	improved
agree	يتفق - يوافق	agreed
share	يشارك	shared

## Irregular verbs - askiroll jet illesill

@Present D	Past
get hot نِسْدُن - يصبح ساختًا	got hot
يتصاعد - يرتفع come up	came up
give کىمن - شهعة	gave
break down مِشْقَىٰ	broke down

(OPr	esent	Past
mean	ئەبىن - ئومد	meant
build	تست	built
find out	يعرف - يكتشف	found out
take	يأخذ - يستعرق	took

# Writing tipl

Use these tips when you write a letter to the editor of a newspaper:

- Start your letter with 'Dear Editor,'.
  - Finish your letter with 'Sincerely yours,'
  - Say why you are writing in the first sentence.
  - ▶ Give a couple of examples to support your idea.

### استخدم هذه الخطوات عندما تكتب خطاب لمحرر صحيفة:

- ◄ إبدأ خطابك بـ ",Dear Editor ومعناها عزيزي المحرر.
- ◄ إنهي الخطاب بـ Sincerely yours" ومعناها تفضلوا بقبول فائق الإحترام.
  - ◄ مَّل الهدف من كتابة الخطاب في أول جملة,
    - ◄ أعطى مثالين لتدعيم فكرتك.



Dear Editor.

### How to write a letter cillan carrieda



Greeting and name التحية واسم المرسل إليه ्राहरूको स्थापित सिविद्यमको स्थित । स

am writing because I think that the school should create an after school writers' club . Don't you think this is a good idea?

🕜 ريامد رسه بالراهرة

हमडेंगे ह

As a fourth-grade student e, I like to write short stories and reports about things that

و المجلمع العالمي

I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why o I think that an afterschool club is a perfect idea.

There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, and the cooking club. Currently o, there is no story writing or poetry o writing club at our school. First, we should create one general writing club.

If we improve a our writing skills now, it will help us in the future in high school o and at college o. It will also help us write, publish, and share our ideas with our global community o. Don't you agree?

Sincerely yours,

Ending خاتمة

Amira El-Sayyed

4th grade

Signature توقيع

The letter body

**CONTR** 



in ⊜ at

لاحظ أن: يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل الآتي:

- in the moming
- in the future
- ▶ at school

- In the afternoon
- in the past

In the evening

بينما يستخدم حرف الجر "at college" قبل الآثي: - at college

### ginteresting ⊕interested?

#### interesting (adj)

- If an adjective ends in (-ed), it describes how a person feels. ◆ الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) تصف كيف يشعر الشخص (في العالب تستخدم لوصف عاقل).
  - These short stories are interesting.

#### interested (adj)

- If an adjective ends in (-ing), it describes the thing that makes the person feel like that.
  - ◆ الصفة المنتهبة بـ (ing) تصف الشيء الذي حعل الشخص يشعر بهذا (في الغالب تستخدم لوصف عير العاقل). My sister is interested in reading short stories.

### and or - but

and

- 🔳 تستخدم في الجمل المثبتة 💻
- ▶ I write stories and reports about things that I think are interesting.

- تستخدم في الجمل المنفية أو الإستفهامية.
- There is no story writing or poetry writing club at our school.
- Do you want to drink tea or coffee?

but

- ا تربط بين جملتين يعبرا عن التناقض
- I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school.

Connect Plus 4+





#### We use them:

- after (Yes No), after and before (please), to separate words or phrases in a list.
- تستخدم بعد كلمات (Yos No) وقبل و بعد كلمة (please) وعندما نريد أن نفصل بين كلمات أو عبارات في قائمة وعندما نريد أن نفصل بين جملتين يربط بينهما رابط.
- I need flour, butter, eggs and sugar for the cake.
  - Yes, I'd like some juice, please.



### Weusethem:

- to show when a letter is missing from a word or to show possession.
  - تستخدم عوضًا عن حرف في كلمة أو عند الاختصار للملكية.
  - ▶ That's my mother's car.

### 3) The full stop (.)

#### mWe'usethem?

- at the end of the sentence.
  - My family bought a new car.

أستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

### कि सुम्हारेक जलके हिंदी

#### Weusethem:

- at the end of the question.
  - السؤال). الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال). عبد عدم عدم عدم الله المعدد عدم عدم عدم الله عدم عدم الله
  - ▶ Where are you going?
  - ▶ Do you like fish?



→Step Ahead

## 5 The exclamation mark (1)

at the end of a sentence to show a strong feeling or emphasize the meaning of the sentence.

نستخدم علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية الجملة لنظهر الشعور القوي أو التأكيد على معنى الجملة.

- The new electric train is very fast!
- ▶ That's interesting!

▶ Hove Egypt!

She's very happy!

### Exercises on Lesson

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

projects - club - reports - interesting

### 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I don't have any free time today, (or and but) I am free this weekend.
- 2 She doesn't like reading (or and but) writing.
- 3. I like poetry (or and but) fiction.
- 4. I don't have time to write in the morning, (or and but) I do have time to write after school.
- There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club, (or -and -but) the cooking club.

द्रतता 2

- 6. I write stories (or and but) reports about things that I think are interesting
- 7. There is no story writing (or and but) poetry writing club at our school
- . Do you want to drink tea (or and but) coffee?

### 3 Circle the correct answer:



- 1 I can't write short stories (and or) articles.
- 2. Would you like to help us (? .)
- 3. There aren't any after-school clubs (at on) our school.
- 4. There's a newspaper, (and but) there isn't a magazine.
- 5. You can help us write puzzles (. ,) stones, and games.
- 6. I go to a photography club (but and) a sports club.

4	Vrite the n	nissing	mark c	r word.	Some	marks	or
M	ords can	be use	d more	than or	nce:		



(. / , / ? / and / at / but / in / or
1. Do you do the recycling the morning
2. Dear Editor / Yours faithfully
3. Do you like to eat fruit vegetables
4. We study environmental science school school
the afternoon
5. Nations (الدول) are working together, there are still a lot
environmental problems

पटनका र

## Read the following text and answer the questions below:



Dear Editor,

lam writing because I think we should open a social media account for the fourth grade students. Will you help us?

We could use our social media account to write about life in the fourth grade. We could write about school or life in general. We would like to interview students in fifth and sixth grade. Some of my friends would like to post their photos and videos. My other friends would like to create games, puzzles, and artwork.

A social media account would be fun and could improve our technology skills at the same time.

We could use our social media account to contact fourth grade students in different countries. We could ask students to send us articles about life in their country.

We could learn a lot about different cultures, but we need to learn how to use the internet safely first. I think this is a great idea and I hope you agree. Can you help us?

Sincerely yours,

Tarek Hussein

Fourth grade

Term 2

## Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. reports - to write - like - I - short stories - and.

2. projects - for her - Amira - and - writes - for fun.

3. interested - friends - My - are - writing - in.

4 grade - fourth - the - is - Amira - in.

5. today - I - have - don't - free time - any.

6. fiction - likes - She - poetry - and.

Write a letter to the editor of your school newspaper:



"Ask the school to create a new club that you want to join."

## Bessons 5-4 Solutions to problems in Egypt

الكلمات الأساسية مُن الدرس Main Vocabulary



smog-free towers أبراج خالية من الضباب الدخاني



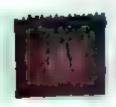
scrubber إلا إلى العاز العاز العاز العاز العار



indoor داخل (البيت)



outdoor خارج (البيت)



greening زراعة الحوائط بالنباتات الخضراء



electric cars سیارات کهربیة



catch dust تلتقط الغبار



harmful ضار

#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

apartment building (مبنت سكنتي)ة	lac green	n walls دوائط خضراء	>
factories gi	provi	ישב - עָפַנ sp בע	1
nature day	eause الطب	<b>e (∧)</b> ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴ ∴	į
jewelry acid	ace take	أخذ دور - يتناوب الأدوار <b>turn</b>	1

### Conjugation of Verbs

### Regular verbs منافعال الملتظمة

Present	Rosu	- Rices	enc	Past	A
research پیدٹ - یقوم بیدٹ علمی	researched	form	يُكُون	formed	
collect	collected	design	يُضمُم	designed	

Connect Plus 4-

Presen	t 🖹	Past	(IPres	ient .	Past
number	نزقم	numbered	cause	يُسَلِّب	caused
repeat	ټڅزر	repeated	provide	يمد - يزود	provided



### Read and learn

### Did you know?

مل تعلم ک

The first electric car was invented in the 1830s in Scotland by the inventor Robert Anderson.

أول سيارة كهربية أُختر عت في الثلاثينيات في أسكتلندا بواسطة المخترع روبرن أندرسون.

### The presentation tips والقرض القرض القرض القرض

- ▶ Be confident.
- Smile.
- Make eye contact with the class. If you are nervous, look at a friend first.
- Speak slowly. Don't talk too loudly or too softly.
- Don't move around a lot. Keep your feet in the same place.
- Use phrases like:
  - Good morning / afternoon, everyone.
  - Let's start with ...
  - To finish / To sum up ...
  - Thank you very much.

- Today I'm going to talk about...
- Now let's look at ...
- ► Are there any questions?

🍑 كُن واثقًا.

🗕 ابتسم.

قم بعمل تواصل بالعين مع الفصل، فإن كلت متوترًا، الظر إلى صديق في البداية.

أندث بروية, لا تتحدث بصوتٍ عالٍ ولا صوتٍ ملخفض،

\* لَا تُتَجُولُ كُثِيرًا، ثبت أمَّدامك في نَفْسَ الْمَكَانَ،

\* استخدم بعض العبارات كالسابق ذكرها.



## Listening

Presenter

: Welcome to the podcast Technology World Today. Today in the studio with me is the environmental scientist Dr. Nesma Hegazy. We'll be talking about the problem of air pollution o. Welcome to the show o Dr. Hegazy.

الملايك فم العرض (البرنامر 🚯 لخطيرة حدًا

آللوت الحواج

🐠 🕊 بحرکون خلایا 🔂 (تنلوعن

👣 pr. Nesma Hegazy

: Thank you for inviting me.

Touri)

, (LE) (i)

Presenter

: So, how big of a problem is air @paralls stop 8 pollution in Egypt today?

🔞 (مناطم:

क्षांस्क

🖟 Dr. Nesma Hegazy

: Well, it is quite serious . especially in the biggest cities. That is what we call outdoor pollution. But most people don't realize that o there is also indoor. pollution - that is the pollution

🛈 (تتعامل مع

🗗 (لحسن الحظ طالقتان

अधीरिक हैं।

that is inside of our homes, schools, and offices. But let's just talk about outdoor air pollution today. This is produced by o our cars, buses, airplanes, factories, and power plants. We must also remember that there is some dust o from the desert in the air. But when we burn fossil fuels, we make air pollution worse . And since o it doesn't rain very much in Cairo or other areas o of the country, the air doesn't get cleaned ...

Presenter

: So, how can technology help us deal with u this problem?

Dr. Nesma Hegazy

: Fortunately ., there are a couple of ways . First of all, there are electric cars. There aren't many on the streets now, but you will definitely & 153





Presenter

: Really? Wow, I am Impressed . Thank you so

much for talking with us today, Dr. Hegazy.

## Exercises on Lessons (

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

education - health - fossil - airplanes

Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's 1

It is created by 2

, traffic, factories, and power plants.

When we burn 6 ... fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals

to clean our houses, we create pollution.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

burn - grow - poliution - power plants

: Hi, Kareem. Do you have any information about air Tarek

? I have to do research about it for my

school.

Kareem

: Sure. It's one of the biggest problems for people's health.

Tarek

: What creates air pollution?

Kareem

: I think airplanes, traffic, factories and 2

can create pollution.

Tarek

Do fossil fuels cause air pollution, too?

Kareem

Of course. When we 6

fossil fuels, we

create pollution.

Tarok

: Thanks, Kareem.

Kareem

: Not at all.

### Choose the correct answer:

1. The first electric car was (invented - discovered - published) in the 1830s.

2 (Air - Water - Soil) pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants.

3. When we burn fossil fuels, we create (education - pollution - presentation).

You can find scrubbers on (apartments - schools - factories).

5. The smog free (towers - houses - hospitals) help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.

6. (Greening -Reading - Growing) is growing a wall of plants on the side of

a building.

7. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in (winter - autumn - summer).

8. Plants (produce - absorb - clean) carbon dioxide.

9. In hot countries, the green walls provide (shade - sun - rain) and help to cool the air.

10. Plants produce (carbon dioxide - oxygen - hydrogen).

11. The plants keep the buildings (cool - cold - warm) in winter.

### Read the following text and answer the questions below:



Air pollution is one of the biggest problems for people's health. Air pollution is created by airplanes, traffic, factories, and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong cleaning chemicals to clean our houses, we create pollution. However, there are some new and exciting ways to solve the problem of air pollution.

We have learned about scrubbers and smog free towers that help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry. Another method which is becoming popular is called greening. Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building.

Why is this helpful? The plants help to clean the air because they absorb carbon dioxide and they produce oxygen. The plants also catch dust and other harmful pollution. In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in summer. The plants keep the buildings warm in winter. The cooler temperatures are also easier for people to live in. The plants also provide homes for bees, insects, and birds, so greening helps nature, too.

1. What causes air pollution?

2. How do scrubbers and smog free towers help air pollution?



				Le:	ssons 5-	6
. What is g	reening?	,				
·						
I. How does	greening h	elp air pollutio	17			
1	anina hatu	6. A 1 1	***** ** ****		•	
How is gr		ful in hot count	ries?			
Llow does		elp nature?				
HOW does		anh uarnte t				
Maka	vesentation	to your class			Studen	r'e
Make a		to your class			Book	
		ocial media	platform t	for kids"		
ideas to h	ilp your					
				4-111		
How old	should the u	isers be? 🕨	∕∕hat will we	taik about?		
	thould the u ures can we		Mat will we	taik about?		
► What pict ► Will there	ures can we be games a	share? and competition		taik adout?		
► What pict ► Will there	ures can we	share? and competition		taik about?		
What pict Will there What are	ures can we be games a	share? and competition join?	s?	talk about?		
What pict Will there What are	ures can we be games a the rules to	share? and competition join?	\$7			
What pict Will there What are	ures can we be games a the rules to	share? and competition join?	s?			
What pict Will there What are	ures can we be games a the rules to	share? and competition join?				
What pict Will there What are	ures can we be games a the rules to	share? and competition join?	s?			
What pict Will there What are	ures can we be games a the rules to	share? and competition join?				
What pict Will there What are	the rules to	share? and competition join?	**************			

## Unit 10 Test 4







(4Men

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. We send emails using electronic (radios TVs devices machines)
- 2. An instand message is a (public general private secret) message
- 3. The (email presentation letter instant message) is a message that you can send on a social media platform.
- 4. You must have an email (internet phone account laptop) to send an email.

### 2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (247) آخر الكتاب.

- I like to write stones and about things that I think are interesting.
- 2. I write for my ..... and for fun.
- 3. Some of my friends are also

in writing after school.

4. I think that an after-school

is a perfect idea.

### B Reading (11Ms)

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3/6)

### publish - checklist - touch type - story

Adam : Hi, Mom. Do you want to read my new 0.

?

Mom: Of course I do, honey.

Adam : Here you are.

\* This is an incredible story, Adam. You should let more people

read it.

Adam : How do I do that, Mom?

Mom : First you should . ... ..... it. Just remember to sit up

158

- Step Ahl

The state of the s		191
straight and keep your feet	Test 4	4
or 15 minutes. Then, you can ask the school to	a break	every 10
it in the school newspaper.	·	
Adam : OK, Mom.		
Read the following text and answer the question	ns belo	W: (4Ms)
A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs who posts information there regularly for others to replogs about many different topics like sports or cooking A viog is similar to a blog because it is a personal vipeople post information for others. The difference is the people post videos they make instead of written texts.	ad. Ther	e are
Choose the correct answer:		
1 A blog belongs to (family - friends - all people - one p	erson).	
2 Avlog is a personal (website -email -World Wide We	b - prese	intation)
Answer these questions:		
3. What's a blog?		
4 What is the difference between a blog and a viog?		
		-
C The Reader (Amir takes action)		
5 A- Read and write T (True) or F (False):		(4Ms)
1 Amir can't check the washing machine.	(	)
2 There was a village below Amir.	(	)

Choose the correct answer:

Amir took the (bread - shopping - washing - clothes) out.

Amir took the (fish - grandma - laundry - village) up to the roof.



D Writing (11Ms)	
6 Choose the correct answer:	(4Ma)
<ol> <li>You (mustn't - can't - should - shouldn't) ask for help if you something.</li> <li>I'm very busy today, (so - or - and - but) I'm free tomorrow.</li> <li>She shouldn't (speak - speaks - spoke - speaking) loudly on g presentation.</li> </ol>	iving a
4. We don't want to go to Alexandria (or - and - but - so) Mate summer.	ouh next
Order the words to make correct sentences:	(2Ma)
1. pollution - problems - cause - What - air - does?	?
2 write - You - story - by hand - your - shouldn't.  8 Write an email to your friend Ramy:	
Tell him your opinion about using social media. Do you social media or not? What do you use social media for? Do think social media is good or bad? Why? Your email address hany@school.net. Your friend's email address is ramy@hotmall.com.	o you

From:	
То:	
Subject:	
*********************	*** ***********************************
+48+4++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++++	440114001400140014001 0011++01100114001114400 44400011144000111144000114011+1011
*40***	44514455144514451
*****	

Theme (4) rm a responsible pen



n the road!



#### in this unit I will ....

- explore different types of transportation
- contrast urban and rural lifestyles.
- · learn words connected to transportation.
- review comparative and superlative adjectives.
- read a text about the history of transportation.
- read and write a plan for an ideal city and transportation network. tisten to a radio show about transportation around the world.
- talk about different transportation around the world.
- create a radio show about transportation in Egypt.

#### Objectives

Transportation: airplane, cab, canal, canoe, destination, ferry, mule, on foot, on time, rocket, steam train, streetcar, subway, traffic, traffic lights, traffic jam, trip, wagon, walking, waterway. Vocabulary

A cleaner urban environment: bike path, green spaces, garbage. recycle, recycling bins, reduce, resident, reuse, roof, trash, volunteer, water vapor

- Comparative and superlative adjectives
- The coast is greener than the desert. - The Nite is the longest river in the world.
- Language Kareema is unhappy. I dislike playing tennis, but I like football,

Reading

Listening

challenges

integrated cross-

- An informative text about city transportation; a text about the history of
- transportation; a plan for an ideal city Writing Writing expressions to give an opinion; planning an ideal city.
- Discussing and describing transportation where you live and in your Speaking country; the advantages and disadvantages to types of transportation; performing a radio show about transportation.
  - A conversation about a visit to a science museum; a radio show about different types of transportation around the world
- Life skills Decision making: choosing greener forms of transport
- Values Independence lesues and
- Globalisation Social studies: traffic signs and rules

### Lesson 1 Transportation

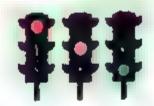
A CONTRACTOR OF THE REAL PROPERTY.

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





public transportation ، المواصلات العامة



traffic lights إشارات المرور



traffic jam י וצגש מופן יי



traffic rules قواعد المرور



, **destination** جهة الوصول



، لافتات - علامات



turn left السيمعتي



seat belt حزام الأمان



on time في الوقت المحدد



on foot سيرًا على الأقدام



on the road قريفالملد .



رحلة قصيرة



## Conjugation of Verbs

### Regular verbs: مُنْفِعَالِ المِنتَظْمَةُ: Regular verbs

pres	ent	Past	Presento.	Past
effect	يۇلر على	affected	explore بستكشف	explored
listen to	يستمع إلى	listened to	create نسنما	created
talk about	يلحدث عن	talked about	complete يُكمِل	completed
walk	முள்வு	walked	يتحرك - يُحَرِّك	moved
	يلوفف - يُوهِ	stopped	continue پستمر في - پواصل	continued

#### الأفعال غير المنتظمة - Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
leave home	left home	make يعنع	made
يعدر الشرل		leave يُغادر	left
Mitto		get to سا إلى	got to
بُقابل - يلتمَي ر meet		wear يرتدي ٠ يلبس	wore
يجلس قى sit in		go slow يسير ببطء	went slow
الأخذ lake	took		

### Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

There are more than 1.4 billion vehicles on the Earth. There are about 7.2 million electric cars.

يوجد أكثر من 1,4 ملبار مركبة على الكرة الأرضية. ويوجد حوالي 7,2 مليون سيارة كهربية.

### Did you know?

مل تعلم؟

In 1868, the first traffic light was in London in front of the House of Parliament.

في علم 1868 أقيمت أول إشارة مرور في لندن أمام مبنى البرلمان.



#### Read and learn

#### Transportation

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public transportation ...

However, many cities nowadays have a big problem: traffic 🙉.

I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop. and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us (مُواطِّنَاتُهُ مُعَالِّنَا السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَالَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّمُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّمِةُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّامُ عَلَى السَّامُةُ عَلَى السَّامُ عَلَى السَّامُ عَلَى السَّامُ عَلَى السَّمُ عَلَى السَّامُ عَلَى السَّ an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse o. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time o. I can't make the trip on foot (عبر الوقائدة عليه المعالقة على المعالقة عليه المعالقة على ال because my school is too far to walk to.



Reem

(gpall) (a

िरावाक त्यायी है।

(lowl) ()

(احقة الومول)

We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the destination o you want.

#### Trafficrules



Do not continue driving.



G Be careful. There are animals on the road.



You cannot turn left.



Go slow. There are children playing.



O You must wear your seat belt.



### Remember 1551

#### وسائل المواصلات يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر "by":

by car by ship by bus

by train

by subway

by bike

by boat

by streetcar

■ بينما كلمة "foot: "ستخدم قبلها حرف الجر "on foot: "on" >

💴 إذا أتى قبل وسيلة المواصلات (... a - an – the – my – his – her) يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر "on - in".

on a bus on a train

on an airplane

on a ship

▶ in his car

in a taxi

💻 كل وسائل المواصلات يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر (on) ما عدا (car – taxi) يستخدم قبلها حرف الجر (in).

### Exercises on Lesson



Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### traffic rules - traffic jam - bus - trip

Rana

: Hi, Mariam.

Marlam : Hi, Rana.

Rana

: How do you go to school?

Mariam : I go to school by 0 .... ...

Rana

: How often do you get into a 2 . . . .

Mariam : I get into a traffic jam five days a week.

Rana

Mariam : It sometimes takes an hour.

Connect Plus 4 -

### Read and complete the text with words from the box:

trip - traffic - destination - transportation

Cities are exciting places to live. There are a lot of activities and people to meet. There are also good hospitals, schools, and public

- However, many cities nowadays have a big problem:
- . We have good public transportation. The problem is that buses don't always go to the 
  you want.

### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

My name is Reem. I'm in grade four. I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Reem is in grade (three four five).
- 2. Reem has to sit in a (traffic jam traffic lights traffic rules) every day on her way to school.

### Answer these questions:

- 3. How long does the trip to school take?
- 4. Why can't Reem go to school on foot?

### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Buses and trains are (private public high) transportation.
- 2. When there's traffic (rule light jam), cars and buses don't move.
- 3. The (class traffic trip) to school sometimes takes us an hour.
- 4. When the traffic (jam rule light) is red, you must stop.



Transa A
When there's traffic jam, buses and cars don't always go to the (trip - destination - vehicle) you want.  I leave home early to get to school (on - in - at) time.  She goes to school (on - by - in) bus.  My dad goes to work (by - on - in) his car.  I go to school (on - by - in) foot.  We travel to Tanta (on - in - by) a train.  Some tourists go to Luxor (on - by - in) boat.  He traveled to America (in - on - by) airplane.
Order the words to make correct sentences:
1. to - are - Cities - exciting - live - places.  2. go - by car - school - Do - to - you?  3. takes - hour - an - school - to - The trip.  4. on - you - school - time - Do - get to?  5. make - foot - I - the trip - on - can't.
Write an email to your friend Wael:
Ask him about the traffic in his neighborhood (audito). How long does his trip to school take? How often does he get into a traffic jam? Is he always on time for school or not? What places does he go to on foot? Your email address is walid@school.net. Your friend's ernail address is wael@yahoo.com.  From:  To:
Subject:
175774167 1570 +1 ++4 -48 -80 11744+11174+1 1741+17 47 1 1 47 1 11 1 10 +1

### Lesson 2

### Language

## Main Vocabulary الدرس الأساسية في الدرس





neighborhood



ecological بيثي



green spaces مساحات خضراء



bike path مسار دراجات



residents



يتطوع - متطوع



volunteer (v) (n) garbage - waste (n) قمامة



pick up بلاقط - يجمع



recycle يعيد تدوير



reduce يخفض - يقلل



reuse يعيد استخدام



recycling bin اعادة تدويرها

### Conjugation of Verbs

#### Regular verbs addition Hanill

į	Va la Lezelli		The same of the sa	The state of the s	egenn i	V Gar
	learn about ن - بعرف عن	يتعلّم عر	learned (learnt) about	disconne	ect يفصل الكهرباء	disconnected
	sound like	يبدو	sounded like	recycle	וַצּיַב יַנפּוּנ	recycled
	pick up	لتيوط	picked up	agree	پتفق - بوافق	agreed



### الأفعال غير المنتظمة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة المعالجة

₫.P	resent	Past	Cifresent	Past
mean	أعبَى - يُومِد به	meant	know about نعرف عن	knew about
ride	يركب	rode	think يَمْكُر - يعتقد	thought
throw	مُعُون - مُعِرَم	threw	choose אַבֿװַן	chose

### Read and learn

### Did you know?

مل تعلم؟

Students at the University of Fayoum can share bikes from three 'bike stations'.

الطلاب في جامعة الفيوم يمكنهم أن يتشاركوا الدراجات في ثلاث محطات للدراجات.

### Creating a cleaner urban environment

Dina: Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class yesterday?

Talia: Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban environment.

Dina : Oh, really? What did you learn?

Well, it's important to have green spaces o in a city. The air is cleaner there. And people are happier when they have green spaces, too. So, that means we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle o water.

ीरमण 2

Dina: That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, don't we?

ON SALVINIAN CHES

Talia: Yes, and we need bike paths of for people to ride their bikes on.

و سان مخلفات یمکن اعادهٔ ندویرها

Dina: I agree. What can residents o do to help?

و المطالقة المعامل

Talla: One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins of for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal. And I learned that in some places, people volunteer of to pick up garbage of in

**600** 0

CHAIN (I

Dina : People who throw garbage really make me

( CHALLES)

المعد استخدام

angry! I'd like to be the best volunteer 6 in my neighborhood 6!

600 b

Talia: And do you know about the 3 Rs?

Dina : I don't think so.

Talia: Reduce , Reuse , and Recycle . Reduce the waste you create.

Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones. And recycle everything you can.

Talia: I hope we can all be more ecological in the future.

## Grammar Study 🎘

#### prefix

We use the prefix "re-" at the beginning of some words to mean "again".

▶ Reuse things as much as possible before buying new ones.

➤ We can recycle water.

word reuse reuse
cycle recycle



### (dis- / un-) prefixes

We use the prefixes (السرابق) "un-" and "dis-" at the beginning of some words to mean "not". They are used to give opposite and negative meanings to adjectives, adverbs, verbs and nouns.

- ▶ Kareema is crying. She is unhappy,
- Sweets are unhealthy.
- I dislike playing tennis but I like football.
- Please disconnect the computer when you leave the room.

word	dis-	word	นก-
ike ike	dislike	happy	unhappy
agree	disagree	friendly	unfriendly
connect	disconnect	popular	unpopular
honest	dishonest	healthy	unhealthy

## (Adjectives) Comparison

#### Comparative degree:

- We use the comparative form to compare two people, two animals or two things. تُستخدم الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة (الصفات) لنقارن بين شخص وشخص المقارنة وشئ ...... وهكذا.
  - Apartments are usually smaller than houses.
- We add (er) to the short adjective and use the word (than) after it.
  - 🖷 نضيف للصفة القصيرة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (than مِن).

small ▶▶▶ smaller tall ▶▶▶ taller green ▶▶▶ greener

- When the adjective ends in (e), we add (r).
  - 📜 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (e) نضيف لها (r) فقط.

large ▶▶▶ larger nice ▶▶▶ nicer fine ▶▶▶ finer

The bus is larger than the car.

Connect Plus 4 -

When the adjective ends in a consonant after one vowel, we double the final consonant before adding (er).

إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك ناطق نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة (er).

big ▶▶▶ bigger fat ▶▶▶ fatter thin ▶▶▶ thinner

- Cities are bigger than towns.
- When the adjective ends in (y), we change the (y) into (i) before adding (er).
  (er).
  (er).

heavy ►►► heavier easy ►►► easier scary ►►► scarier happy ►►► happier noisy ►►► noisier

- The desk is heavier than the chair.
- We use (more) or (less) before long adjectives and the word (than) after them.
  او (less) وبعدها (more).
  - ► Reading a story is more interesting than watching a film.
  - Watching a film is less interesting than reading a story.

#### Superlative degree:

- We use the superlative form to compare more than two people, animals or things.
- تستخدم الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة (الصعات) للمقاربة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص
   أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء .... وهكذا.
  - My school is the greenest of all schools in the town.
  - The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world.
- We add (est) to the short adjective and use the word (the) before it. أنضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) ونضع قبلها كلمة (the).

Term 1

#### Lesson 2

- الصفات المنتهية بـ (e) أو المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك للطق أو الصفات المنتهية بـ (y)، السابق شرحها تنطبق على نفس هذا النوع من المقارنة.
- We use (the most) or (the least) before long adjectives.
  - = إذا كانت الصفة طويلة، نضع قبلها إما (the most) أو (the least).
  - Pollution is one of the most dangerous problems.
  - This is the least exciting match I've ever watched.

### Irregular Adjectives:

- We have some irregular adjectives like (good bad).
- يوجد بعض الصفات الشاذة التي لا تنطبق عليها القواعد السابقة مثل (good bad).

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
good	better (than)	(the) best
bad 4	worse (than)	(the) worst

- My mobile is a good one.
- Mom's mobile is better than my mobile.
- ▶ Dad's mobile is the best one.
- On Saturday, the weather was bad.
- On Sunday it was worse than Saturday.
- On Monday it was the worst.

### Exercises on Lesson



### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

### buildings – parks – environment – green

Dina : Hi, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class

yesterday?

Talla : Yes, I did.

: Oh, really? What did you learn?

Connect Plus 4.

Talla : I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban 0 .....

Dina : How can we make this environment clean?

Talia : Well, it's important to have ② . . . . . . . . . . . spaces in the city.

Dina : What do we need to make green spaces in our city?

Talla: We need more 0 ... and trees.

### Choose the correct answer:

(Vocabulary)



- 1. Put your plastic bottles in the (volunteers recycling bins) .
- (Green spaces Bike paths) keep the air clean in our cities.
- 3. Over 1,000 (residents volunteers) live in my neighborhood.
- 4. We should (recycle reduce) the traffic in our cities.
- There is too much (garbage green space) in the street. It looks very messy.
- 6. Don't (reduce reuse) this plastic bottle. It's got a hole in it.
- We can (recycle reduce) plastic, paper, and glass at the recycling center.
- Twenty-one (recycling bins volunteers) helped at the beach clean-up yesterday.

### Choose the correct negative form:



- The opposite of healthy is (dishealthy unhealthy).
- The opposite of like is (dislike unlike).
- 3. The opposite of connect is (disconnect unconnect).
- 4. The opposite of friendly is (disfriendly unfriendly).
- 5. The opposite of happy is (dishappy unhappy).
- 6. The opposite of agree is (disagree unagree).
- 7. The opposite of popular is (dispopular unpopular).
- 8. The opposite of honest is (dishonest -unhonest).



### Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

- The lion is a (strong stronger the strongest) animal.
- g. Going to school on foot is (healthy healthier healthiest) than going by bus.
- My brother thinks that science is (more less the most) difficult subject.
- The elephant is (heavier heavier than heaviest) the hippo.
- f. This bus is (big biggest bigger) than that van.
- € Football is (more the most the least) popular than handball.
- 7. My brother is (the least less the most) careful than me on crossing the street.
- 8. I think pollution is (more less the most) harmful problem we face.
- 9. Yesterday's film was (more the most the least) interesting one I've ever watched. I didn't like it.
- 10. Doing sports is (good better the best) than watching them.
- 11. Houses are (expensive more expensive the most expensive) than apartments.
- 12. My street is the (green greener greenest) one in the town.
- 13. Today the weather is the (bad worse worst) of the week.
- 14. I'd like to be (good better than the best) volunteer in my neighborhood.
- 15. Your clothes are clean, but my clothes are (clean cleaner cleanest).

//	V may a management of the second of the seco
II E	O-d-11 t ttwast contensors
( ·	Order the words to make correct sentences:
1	The State of the s



l,	busier -	Damietta	- Cairo	- is -	than.
----	----------	----------	---------	--------	-------

shield telet last jused lokafet addatildes prolecte estimiteta dedicycleologia for 4 am dr gr = 1 a

2 the biggest - in - The Sahara - the world - is - desert.

पुरस्क र

- 3. medal better is A gold a silver than medal
- 4. more ecological fossil fuels than is Solar energy.
- 5. is the world Tutankhamun famous the most in pharaoh.

### 6 Write an email to your friend Ahmed:

Tell him what you have learned to keep your environment clean. How can you make the air cleaner? Do you need green spaces in your environment or not? What about parks and trees? What can residents in your neighborhood do to help? Your email address is ali@vahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

From:	
To:	
Subject:	
	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
	+41 + +115++ and
* ** * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	* 1 * 1 * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
***	
**	10 7 01 04 0 000 1000 0 11 0 0 0 11 0 0 1 1 1
,,	1 *** 4 ** 4 ** ** *** * *** * *** *
	130 th at 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
	4 * 5 5 * 1001 025 0001 000 1115 * 51015 0 1 1 1155 0 00 1 pc 1 10 51 1 5
. , . ,	* * * ** ** ** ** **** * **** ** ******

िरमा र

176

- Step Ahead

Lesson 3

# Lesson 3. Transportation in the past

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية مٰي الدرس











مركبة لنقل البصائع

streetcar (a)jill

وراد فراد مراد فراد المراد المرا

mule بغل









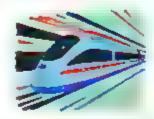
girplane õjilla

rocket ¿gjla

ship āiuom

conoe ieuē









subway

المترو

high-speed train ِ قطار مائق السرعة

steam train مُطار يسير بالبخار

steam engine قراغارة

#### Extra Vocabulary

#### كلمات إقافيق

intens of transportat	وسائل البقل <b>on</b>	the country	الريف
wheel		rural areas	مناطق ريفية
Invention	اختراع	humans	بنو آدم (الإنسان)
System	نظام	gasoline	بنزين
angineer	مهندس	goods	بضائع

Term 2



## Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular verbs विविधानी विविधा

Presen		Past	/CP	resent	Past
Invent	يخترع	Invented	burn	يحرق - يستهرك	burned (burnt)
transport	ينقل	transported	design	يَصَمُم	designed
арреаг	يظهر	appeared	move	يتحرك	moved
(1)					

### irregular verbs مُعَالُ عَيْنُ المُلاَطِينَ المُعَالُ عَيْنُ المُلاَطِينَ المُعَالُ عَيْنُ المُلاَطِ

Present		POST	_ ACTO	resent	Past
begin	تندا	began	buy	پشتري	bought
come	ហ្វារ៉ែ	came	fly	يطير	flew

## Read and learn

### Transportation then and now Milger in the light

Transportation is the way that people move from one place to another. It is also the way that people move things from one place to another. A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming.

After that, humans began to use animals like mules o, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once of they invented the wheel o, people started to use small wagons of and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods of to markets in cities more easily. In rural areas, many people

still use these means of transportation today. The invention of the steam engine of the steam engines could travel much faster than using people or the wind to move boats.



**340** 

9 (تمجردان) 9 (تمخلة)

و (مُرْكِبات لَنَمْل البَضَائِع) •

والاثراق



The first steam train was in Wales in the 1800s. The train made trips between rural and urban areas faster and safer. The first car that ran on gasoline also appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives

CARLO COMO (S CHAIRM (

D DITION

COMPAND (I)

easier. Cities like London and Boston had some of the first streetcars and subway systems. The subway in London opened in 1863. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast. From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly through the skies. Today, we fly from one continent to another in no more than one day. We are even able to send people to the Moon in rockets.

The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing o greener airplanes and ships, too.

### Activity Book Text A B

#### Transportation in ancient Egypt

In ancient Egypt, the most important highway • was the مركب شراعت صغيرا •

River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river

because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of

transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called

a skiff . They made this simple boat from papyrus

🕡 चेतुक ब्रह्म

و حال: و توسافات

🗿 آلمجاديقة.

clin (o

اللحاق

and rope o. People could travel short distances o in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail o to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction . The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

## Exercises on Lesson 3

Read and complete the text with the words from the box;

transportation - boats - goods - wagons

In the past, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses for transportation. Then came small • like canoes and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small • and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their • to markets in cities more easily.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### water - solar - gasoline - electric

Maha: Hi, Manar. What are you doing?

Manar : Hi, Maha. I'm doing research about transportation today.

Maha : What do you mean?

Manar: Transportation that uses 0 ..... and burns fossi

fuels are bad for the environment.

Maha: What can we do to solve this problem?

Manar: We are developing cleaner forms of transportation like

② ...... cars.

Maha : Really?

Manar : Yes. There are even electric buses that use 6 ....

energy from solar panels on their roofs.

Maha : That's amazing!

### 3) Choose the correct answer:

In the past, people used (animals - cars - rockets) like mules, donkeys
and horses for transportation.

2. The fastest way to travel to a different country is by (subway - airplane' train).

- t's faster to travel on the (subway wagon streetcar) in a busy city than by bus.
- 4 Horses pull (trains canoes carts).
- In the past, farmers used to transport their goods to markets by (canoes rockets wagons).
- Ships with steam engines could travel faster than (rockets airplanes boats).
- 7. It's fun to travel across a lake by (streetcars canoes wagons).
- 6. The first subway (airplane train boat) opened in London in 1863.
- 9. Astronauts went into space on a (subway rocket train) for the first time in the 1960s.
- 10. In San Francisco, people use electric (canoe airplane streetcar) to travel around the city.
- 11. Today (subways airplanes trains) can fly to different continents in one day.

	Order the words	4			
-4	Draer the words	to	maka	COPPOSE	annin
	ALGOLD HIGH MAIN	w	HIGNE	COLLECT	seniences:
	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	-			

- 1 with faster Ships steam engines could travel than boats.
- 2. first The in Wales steam was train.
- 3. in opened subway in 1863 The London.
- 4 developing of transportation are People forms cleaner.
- Lare greener designing Engineers and ships airplanes.
- to do tales allegas weatherntoolisables, watering allering place of a terror of a collection of
- 6 buses electric solar energy use that There are.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:



In ancient Egypt, the most important highway (طريق سريع) was the River Nile. The Egyptians traveled mostly along the river because all the major cities were along the River Nile. So boats and ships were the most important form of transportation. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a skiff (مركب شراعي صغير). They made this simple boat from papyrus and rope (حبال). People could travel short distances (حبال) in these boats, or they could use it for fishing. They used oars (المجاديف) to make the boats move. They made larger boats and ships from wood. These ships had a large sail (شراع) to catch the wind and they used oars to move and control the direction (التجاه). The Egyptians built many different kinds of boats for traveling, fishing, and transporting goods.

1.	Why did the ancient Egyptians travel on the River Nile and not on
	roads?
2	What was a skiff made from?
3.	What was it used for?
4.	What did they make the larger ships from?
	***************************************
5.	Why did these ships use salls?
	Avellend appointed antique includes includes includes interpretated industry. Its desired interpretation in the despitable of
6.	What did the oars do?
	44971440044497144451442144941149514481140514061100014041100014449556556499954499944441114441400001496514141160414040000000000000000000000000



# Lawon H Writing

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس





eenal



roof سمّن - سطح



nuclear energy



hydrogen gas غار الهيدروجين



water vapor بخار الماء



water way ممر ماثری



route طریق



top part إلجزء الأعلى

#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

loud تعدرسة on my way to school مالي الصوت المدرسة too far

## Expressions of giving opinion

# Conjugation of Verbs

# Regular verbs ं वैविधार्थी । । ।

( Pre	sent	Past	Rice	SEHL	Rasu
travel	يسافر		need	يحتاج	needed
stay	يبقى - يظل		believe	يۇمن - يعتقد	believed
-		•	produce	أيلتج	produced
protect	أتحصآ	protocia	:	يُصِف	described
play	يلعب	played	describe	- Carti	accounted.

## Definitions Property SB Students

waterway

the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake.

water vapor

: water in the form of gas.

canal

a long area of water, made for boats to travel on.

roof

the top part of a building.



#### Read and learn

#### Sherif's plan for an ideal city

#### 1. My Ideal City o

environment.

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. I believe that parks are important for everyone. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion around the houses to help them than burning fossil fuels because it is better for the





0 میلان المواجد 9 مالین المواجد

O Chell Hierr

CHILLIAN O



# 2 Water Transportation

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

#### 3. Land Transportation

All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabso, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless . I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.

(شخصتا عند

(سيارات أحظ

🐠 (स्थान

🖰 آنا مثلکد ان

## Activity Book Text A B

They go along the river and everywhere else in my city.

#### My green city

by Hana

المع علما) 😏 (ساطر البحر الأخم

My Ideal city is iocated on o the Red Sea coast . There مساحلت دفعرا are houses and apartments, schools, two museums, and و دالطبيعة a hospital. There are a lot of green spaces • where people 🕡 رائظل can go for walks, ride their bikes, and enjoy being in nature o. Personally, I think that green spaces are the most important part of a city. There are also large trees in all the streets to provide shade ex

#### Clean energy

Most of the electricity for the city comes from a wind farm on the coast. The wind farm has 12 wind turbines o that generate electricity 💿. Many buildings have solar panels 💿 . In my opinion, all buildings should have solar panels on their roofs. I am sure that people will stop using fossil fuels ப்பும் ந soon because renewable energy • is cleaner.

#### Transportation for goods and people

There is a system of canals o in my city with bike paths next to them. I believe that more people will ride their bikes if there are more blke paths . The canals provide more outdoor spaces for people to enjoy, but they also provide transportation. Electric canal boats carry goods across the city , so there are fewer trucks on the road. The residents travel around the city on electric buses, streetcars, and cabs. All the transportation is electric so there is less pollution and the streets are quieter and cleaner.

When you write a heading, you use capital letters for the important words. You don't have to use capital letters for conjunctions (and, so, but), articles (a, an, the), or prepositions (to, on, in, into, for).

أعندما تكتب عنوان، تستخدم حروف كبيرة للكلمات الهامة ، ليس لزامًا أن تستخدم حروف كبيرة للروابط (and - so - but)، والأدوات (a - on - the) أو حروف الجر .(to - on - in - into - for)

Calling of the Co

(أولد الكهرياء)

🛭 (آلواج شمسیة)

اللهُ عُلَاقَةً مُتَحِدِدِةً اللهِ الله

Claim in

श्रीकी 🚯

المديثة المديثة

الشكان الشكان

(Tiliujat ()

# Exercises on Lesson (4)

Read and complete the text with words from the box:

fossil - electricity - solar - burning

My name is Sherif. All the 
in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have 
panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler. In my opinion, solar energy is better than burning fuels because it is better for the environment.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



bike paths - green spaces - recycling bins - residents - solar panels - traffic jams - transportation - trees

My ideal city In my ideal city, there are a lot of 0 . where people can go for walks. There are 3 in all the streets to provide shade and make the buildings cooler. All the buildings have 6 on their roofs. There are 4 in the parks and streets, so people can recycle their plastic bottles. There are lots of 😉 ..... , too, so that people can ride their bikes. The G travel around the city on electric buses and streetcars, so there are fewer ? . All the @ is electric so the air is cleaner and there's less noise.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The (floor window roof) is the top part of a building.
- 2. The (canal ocean sea) is a long, narrow area of water, made for boats to travel on.
- Water vapor is water in the form of (gas liquid solid).
- The (waterway subway railway) means the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake.

पुरस्क

#### Unit 11

- 5. Boats that use gasoline are (louder quieter softer) than boats that use electricity. Electric boats are calmer.
- The new buses produce (oxygen fossil fuels water vapor), so they
  are safe to the environment.

# Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1. important for are Parks everyone.
- 2. The on new homes solar panels have their roofs.
- 3. houses the around are There palm trees.
- 4.-better is than burning Solar energy fossil fuels.
- 5. very important It's to protect waterways our.
- 6. cleaner The air if we will be use electric vehicles.
- 7. warm air and water vapor produce Hydrogen vehicles.
- 8. bike paths your bike You on the can ride.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler.





## Lessons 5-6 Transportation around the world & Project

# Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



advantages مميزات



disadvantages

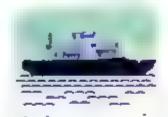


get wet

ببتل



**cab** سيارة أجرة



غبارة - معدية غبارة - معدية



radio show عرض إذاعب

#### Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs विकासिका है।

Prese	nt L	Past	Pire	sent	Past
guess	يُخَمُّن	guessed	decide	بُقْرُر	decided
perform	تۇدى	performed	carry	يحمل	carried
record	يُشجُل	recorded	use	يستخده	used

#### Definitions Property A B Activity

streetcar

: This travels around a town or city. It can carry about 40 people. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric.

cab

: This transports people on roads around cities or towns. Only three or four people can travel in this. It can be expensive.

subway

- : This travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. It's fast and it isn't expensive.
- : This takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. It can be quite small or very big.

190

ferry

- Step Ahead

# Listening

: Welcome back e, everyone. Now we are going to take calls from some of our listeners. We want to know how children get to school • where you live. Are there any advantages or disadvantages? Hello, you're our first caller e.

Astrid: Hi, this is Astrid from the Netherlands . A lot of children ride their bikes to school in my country. I think something like 75% of children actually . As you might know, the

Netherlands is a very flat country e, so it is easy Astrid to ride a bike - you don't have to go up o any big hills or mountains. There are المعالمة ا also a lot of bike paths. An advantage is that you exercise on the way to school o.

Another advantage is that it is good for the environment. A disadvantage is the weather - the Netherlands is a very rainy country so sometimes we get wet . My cousins live in Belgium o, and they ride bikes to school too. மேற்கும் و فبوطريقة فالمحرسة

📵 أهلًا بعودتكم

اللقائمة والمائلة وائلة والمائلة والمائلة والمائلة والمائلة والمائلة والمائلة والمائ

فتمل ا

(Migai 6)

و مُدِي الواقع

و دولة مايسطة)

الولايان المتحدة

الأمريكية

🚯 يعيدة جدَّلُ

Sezi 🔞

Host: Thank you, Astrid. Now for our next caller.

(الحبكا

وأأن فللأو

Ethan: Hithere, I'm Ethan and I'm calling from Vermont in the United States . Children here usually

take a school bus. We live in the mountains,

🚯 (غِي لفِس الوقرة) and in the winter there's a lot of snow. It's too عاصفة ثلجية far o to walk to school if you live in the country. ه (هم ثلك الأيام) School buses are good because they can travel long distances and keep children safe and warm. An advantage is that the school buses can carry a lot of children at the same time . A disadvantage is that they can't drive when there is a big snowstorm e. So, sometimes school is closed on those days . Another disadvantage is that

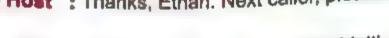
the buses use gasoline. I hope we get electric buses soon.

Connect Plus 4 -

191



Host: Thanks, Ethan. Next caller, please.



Maiti: Good afternoon. My name's Malti and I'm from Bangladesh. In Bangladesh, children use different kinds of transportation a to get to school, like buses. But a lot of people also use boats. This may surprise you, but my school is on a boat. In the morning, the

children wait for the boat to arrive. We all get on and then pick up more children. Finally, we stop the boat on the side of the river and have our classes.

Boats are good here because there is a lot of water. When there are the heavy rains, called monsoons •, the roads are even underwater and you have to use a boat. One advantage of my school boat is that every child can go to it - even if their parents don't have a boat. One disadvantage is that we don't have a playground, so we play on the boat.

Amy

: Hi. My name's Amy and I live in Mackinac Island. It's a very small island in Lake Michigan in the US. It's a popular tourist destination . People like to take cance trips on the lake in the summer, or they ride bikes around the island. The island is unusual because there are no cars and no buses. In winter it's very cold for 5 or 6 months and it snows heavily, so we can't ride our bikes to school like we do in summer. So, in winter we travel to school by snowmobile . My dad drives the snowmobile and I sit behind him. It's fun, and it's more exciting than riding a bike.

192

The inflate things.

CONTRACT OF

WHE IS I

व्यानिकार के

# Exercises on Lessons (5) (6)

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

disadvantages - advantages - expensive - underground

Fares : Hi, Seif. Which types of transportation do you use?

self : Hi, Fares. I usually use the cab and the subway.

Fares: What are the 1 ..... of the subway?

Self : It travels @ .... . It's fast and cheap.

Fares: What are the disadvantages of using a cab?

Self : I think it's ...... and only three or four people can travel in it.

Fares: Which one of them do you prefer?

self : I prefer the subway.

#### 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The (train airpiane streetcar) travels around a town or city. It can carry about 40 people. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric.
- The (advantage disadvantage disagree) of a cab is that it can be expensive.
- 3. The (subway ferry cab) transports people on roads around cities or towns. Only three or four people can travel in this. It can be expensive.
- 4. The (cab streetcar subway) travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. It's fast and it isn't expensive.
- The (ferry airplane train) takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. It can be quite small or very big.
- fast and cheap.

#### Unit 11



1. day - every - school - get to - How - do you?

DES TROBEGRADIOS PROTREMATS SERVICES PLEASURE OF SERVICES ASSESSMENT OF A REPUT OF SERVICES ASSESSMENT OF A RESPECTATION OF THE PROTECTION OF THE PROTECTION

- 2- water on You can by ferry travel.
- 3. school 1 to go car by.

- 4. to school the way She exercise gets on.
- 5. types of Which transport use do you?

## Write an email to your friend Malak:

Tell her about the types of transportation that people use in your country. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each kind of transportation? Your email address is <a href="mailto:nour@yahoo.com">nour@yahoo.com</a>. Your friend's email address is <a href="mailto:mail

From:

To.

Subject.



194

Step Ahead







(4Ms)

# Listen and circle the correct answer:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) أخر الكتاب.

- We have to sit in a traffic (light jam rule road) on my way to school.
- 1 The (bus car transportation trip) to school sometimes takes us an hour.
- 3. The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even (better best - worse - worst),
- Lican't make the trip (on foot by bus by ship by train) because my school is too far to walk to.

### 2 Listen and complete:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آحر الكتاب. ﴿

- 1 The problem with transportation that uses is that it burns fossil fuels.
- 2 Transportation that uses gasoline is bad for the
- 1. People are developing cleaner forms of like electric cars.
- airplanes and ships, too. Engineers are designing

#### B) Reading (11Ms)

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

## spaces - environment - paths - volunteer

- Hey, Talia. Did you go to the science museum with your class Dina
- yesterday? : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban 0 lalia
- Dina Oh, really? What did you learn?
- in a city.
- Well, it's important to have green 🤨 Dina That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too,

don't we? dentet Plus 4 -

195 .

Unit 11
Talla: Yes, and we need bike for people to ride their bikes on.
Read the following text and answer the questions below: (41)
In my city, all transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.
Choose the correct answer:
<ol> <li>In my city, all transportation is now more (dangerous - steam - harmi - ecological).</li> </ol>
2. Electric cabs don't have any (engines - drivers - wheels - motors).
Answer these questions:
3. What does hydrogen gas vehicles produce?
4. Where can we ride our bikes?
C The Reader (Amir takes action)

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):		(4Ms)
1. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags.	(	)
2. The seaguil was in trouble.	(	)
Choose the correct answer:		
3. Amir and his grandmother hanged up the (clothes - cloth -	: A2(1)	ult - roof).

4. Amir's tablet was on the (ground - table - roof - desk).



Writing (IIMI)	
6 Choose the correct answer:	(sh
Sharks are (large - larger than - larger - the largest) than turtles.  Do you think English is (more - most - the least - the most) interesting than French?  Nora is always laughing. She's the (happy - happier - the happies happiest) person I know.  That was (more - the least - less - most) difficult test I've ever done.	ng
Order the words to make correct sentences: (2M	As)
Ltransportation - What animals - people - for - use - do?	
people - The ferry - carry - of - can - a lot.	
8 Write a paragraph of (40) words: (5M	le\
"How you and your family go to school and work"	13)
The thicking the proportion of the state of	

#### Theme (4) l'm a responsible person



Admit Charles II m. At



#### In this unit I will ....

- tearn about geology and cilmate change.
- · review the first conditional.
- read a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change.
- write a newspaper report about what causes climate change.
- listen to a talk about food supplies around the world.
- perform a role play about shopping responsibly.
- plan a plant-based meal.

Globalisation

Issues and

challenges

Integrated crosscurriculum topics

Vocabulary	Geology and weathering: acid rain, atmosphere, deforestation, drought erosion, flood, glacier, landslide, tsunami, water shortage Parts of newspaper: body, caption, headline, lead-in - International agreements: conference, pact, treaty Food production: beef, diversity, food miles, food waste, lents, chickpeas, wheat, burger
Language	<ul> <li>The drought will cause a water shortage. We won't burn fossit fuels. Will you recycle these newspapers later?</li> <li>Tarek will buy an electric car if he saves enough money.</li> <li>If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the environment.</li> <li>My dad was in a conference last week so he is really tired.</li> <li>The leaders went to a conference, but they didn't sign a treaty.</li> </ul>
Reading	A text about an eco-friendly house; a newspaper report about how nations are working together to slow climate change
Writing	people are working together to prevent it, planning and shopping for a plant-based meal
Speaking	Talking about climate change; identifying facts and opinions; role-playing how to shop responsibly; presenting a plan for a plant-based meal
Listening	connection between global warming and food
Life skills	Productivity: the effects of food production.
Values	Respect the environment

science: Earth's geological processes

# Rocks and stones

الكلمات الأساسية مُي الدرس Main Vocabulary





ردمُمَان Kows



flood فیضان



drought خفاف



water shortage نقص المیاه



**lendslide** انهيار أرضي



tsunami (هياج شديد الأمواج)



waves أمواج



currents قیارات ماثیت



heavy ogriculture الزراعة بشكل كثيف



**glacier** نهر جلیدی



erode



erosion

تآكل

				6.1
Extra	Ma	A MILE	aid.	and the
EATI O	A	CHE	1.044	-

كلماك إضافية

يتأكل

hatural process	قيعية طبيعية <b>Lake</b>	بحيرة
erbank	soll ضفة النهر	ئرية
heavy rains	rock أمطار غزيرة	مخر
ea levels	geology مستويات البحر	علم طبقات الأرض - علم الجيولوچيا

#### Unit 12

climate change	لغير مناخي	in danger	في خطر
atmosphere	غلاف جوب	cause	chind
result in	ينتج عنه	affect	<b>پۇ</b> ٹر
rise	ترتفع	slow down	rpil

Definitions

tsunami	: A huge wave created when a volcano exploded under
glacier	the sea  : A huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land
atmosphere	: It is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases
acid rain	: It happens when chemicals from air pollution mix with

## Conjugation of Verbs

#### Regular verbs achitall floor

Pres	ent 🗀 🛴	Past	R	resent	Past
slow down	يُبطئ	slowed down	affect	يُؤثِّر على	affected
perform	يۇدىي	performed	plan	يُذَطِّط	planned
want	پريد - پرغب	wanted	stop	يتوقف - يوقِف	stopped
happen	يحدُث	happened	erode	يتآكل	eroded
rain	تُمْطِر	rained	cause	يُسْلِب	caused
call uv	يشۇ - سەغر	called	damage	يُثْلِف - يُذَفِّر	damaged

## الأفعال غيرة المنتظمة ﴿ Irregular verbs

A PICE	ent A	Past	Pro	sent .	Past
know	بعرف - يعلم	knew	grow	ينمو	grew
rise	يرتفع	rose	buy	يشتري	bought
become	يصبح	became	put	يضع	put

N.S. Cal

Step Ahedi

# Read and learn

#### Did you know?

مل تعلم؟

Nearly 71% of the surface of Earth is water. About 95% of all the water is salt water.

تمثل المياه حوالي 71٪ من سطح الأرض، وحوالي 95٪ من هذه المياه رهب مباه مالحة.

#### Did you know?

مل تعلم

The Sphinx is made of a large piece of a type of stone called limestone. Acid rain damages limestone and another stone called marble. So, acid rain can also damage the Sphinx. أبو الهول مصنوع من نوع من الأحجار يسمى الحجر الجيري. الأمطار الحمضية تُتلف الحجر الجيري ونوع آخر من الأحجار يسمى الرخام، وبالتالي الأمطار الحمضية يمكن أن تُتلف أبو الهول.

#### म्लाम कलीगलम्बा



Erosion • is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows •. The waves and currents • in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode •. Different types of flows - floods, landslides •, tsunamis •, or glaciers • - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this Devotes • - also erode to people do this Devotes • - also erode the land.

do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.

Drought • happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage •

التبارات العالية
 لتكل
 الحرابات أيضية

الدووان

الهبارات أرضية
 تسونامی

أنهارجليدية

🚯 الجفاف

لقص مياه

# Exercises on Lesson

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:



drought - erosion - flood - landslide - water shortage

When heavy rain or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates 

Human activity such as heavy agriculture can also create this.

During a 

, there isn't enough rain, and rivers and lakes become dry. There isn't enough water and there is a 

This affects the environment and farmers can't grow food or feed their animals.

Too much rain in one area can cause a 

. When too much rain falls on hills and mountains and there aren't enough trees to hold the water, there can also be a 

. This is when

2) Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### erosion - drought - shortage - affect

Dina: Hi, Mona. What are you doing?

the soil and rocks move and fall away.

Dina: When does drought happen?

Mona: It happens when there isn't enough rain for a long time.

Mone: When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry.

Dina : Yes, we call this a water 6

रिस्का 2

202

### Choose the correct answer:

- (Erosion Tsunami Flood) happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind or flows.
- 2 The waves and (currents fish boats) in the sea can erode beaches.
- 3. Heavy rains or winds can cause the land to (flood grow).
- When we burn (fossil fuels food rocks), we cause climate change.
- (Agriculture Climate Soil) change causes sea levels to rise and this
  results in more erosion.
- 6. When drought happens, rivers and lakes become (wet dry heavy).
- 7. (Farmers Doctors -Teachers) can't grow food during drought.
- 6. When we don't have enough water, this is called water (flood shortage - erosion).

### Order the words to make correct sentences:

1. in	- beaches - erode - The waves - the sea - can.
	rosion - How - humans - can - affect?
3, re	esults in - change - Burning - fuels - fossil - climate.
	e do - erosion - slow down - can - to - What?
	nange - to rise - sea - Climate - levels - causes.

Egg.

#### Unit 12

# Language

# الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary











ecofriendly صديق للبيئة

electric vehicle | ice caps مركبة كهربية

قمم جليدية

science museum صملد نفعتم





burn





fossil fuels وقود حفري

يحرق

melt يذوب

save (v)

لدكر

#### Conjugation of Verbs

#### Regular verbs authall fluill

A	2111	Geri )	Riesent	A GOST
burn	يحرق - يحترق	burned (burnt)	پڏخر - يُؤمِّر - يُنهِدُ save	saved
melt	يذوب	melted	exercise يتدرّب يتمرّن	exercised
recycle	تعتد يدفتا	recycled	care about يهتم، د	cared about





Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?



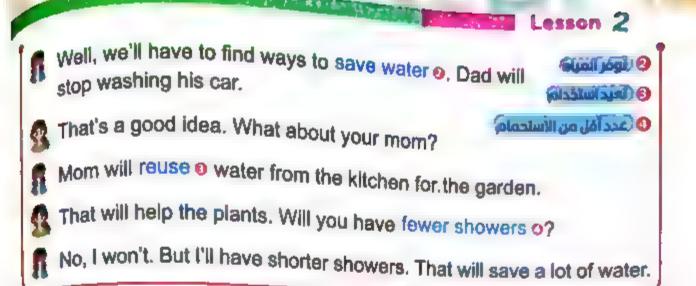
We're fine thanks, but there's a water shortage o here.



Oh, dear. What will you do?









- The drought will cause a water shortage.
- I'll try to find out new ways to help the environment.
- We use it to express actions that will happen in the future.

🚚 📮 يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث سوف تحدث في المستقبل.

We will clean the town beach next Friday.

Connect Plus 4-

205

Unit 1	2
We som	18
Key	W

times use some words with the future simple as:

🦲 توجد كلمات دالة على زمن المستقبل البسيط مثل:

#### rords.

(الأسبوع) القادم ـ.... (week) ـ.... غدًا vomorrow ♦

They will go to the meeting next Saturday.

In the negative form, we use (will not (won't)) before the bare verb. 🛢 ننفى المستقبل البسيط باستخدام ( will not \_ won't) ثم الفعل في المصدر.

We won't burn fossil fuels.

In the interrogative form, we use (will) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the bare verb.

■ عند عمل سؤال على المستقبل البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (ال<mark>انه</mark>) أو نضعها بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

O Will she drop garbage?

No. she won't,

O Will you recycle these newspapers later? Yes, I will.

O What will you do tomorrow?

I'll join the volunteer team.

لا تنسَ أن (will \_ won't) لا بد أن يتبعا بالمصدر. 🗖 الا

# The first conditional [Iff]

ff (وادا - افا) + present simple

future simple

مضارع بسيط + (إذا - لو) الأ

will ('ll - won't) +اا

O If Tarek puts solar panels on his roof, he will make his own electricity.

O Tarek will make his own electricity if he puts solar panels on his roof.

O If you burn fossil fuel, you won't help the environment,

O You won't help the environment If you burn fossil fuel.

O Will you go for a walk if the weather is good?

Yes, I will. (No, I won't.)

We use the first conditional to talk about things that is possible in the future.

🥌 نستخدم الحالة الأولى لـ (ff) للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شيئ في المستقبل.

206

→ Step Ahead

## Exercises on Lesson 2

Read and complete the text with words from the box:

electric - environment - ecofriendly - energy

Tarek wants to make his house more 

If Tarek uses electricity from solar energy, for example, he will save money. What will he do with all that extra money? Tarek will buy an car if he saves enough money. If he buys an electric car, Tarek will help the

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### flood - shortage - reuse - washing

Samira: Hi, Mona. How are you and the family?

Mona: We're fine thanks, but there's a water . . . here.

Samira: Oh, dear. What will you do?

Mona : Well, we'll find ways to save water. Dad will stop 2

his car.

Samira: That's a good idea. What about your mom?

Mona : Mom will 6 . . . . . water from the kitchen for the garden.

Samira: That will help the plants. Will you have fewer showers?

Mona : No, I won't. But I'll have shorter showers. That will save a lot of water.

Read and complete the text with the correct form of the verbs:



#### be - be - feet - live - look - plant

We can help the environment by planting more trees. If we

o...... more trees in our cities, the air o..... cleaner.

The streets will have shade (الله) and the buildings will be cooler. If there

Prettier, too. That is important. If residents • .... in a beautiful

urban environment, they 6 ... ... happier.

Remo



## Choose the correct answer:



- 1. If we (use will use) electric vehicles, our cities (are will bu) cleaner.
- 2. People (exercise will exercise) more if cities (have will have) more bike paths.
- 3. If the polar ice caps (melt will melt), sea levels (rises will rise).
- 4. I (will help won't help) the environment if I (use will use) fossil fuels.
- 5. If it (rains will rain) a lot, there (is will be) a flood.
- Lara (uses won't use) a plastic bag if she (cares will care) about the environment.
- 7. If it (will not rain does not rain), the rivers (don't have won't have) any water.
- If sea levels (rise will rise) a lot, some cities (are will be) under water.
- 9. We (will save won't save) the environment if we (burn with burn) fossil fuels.
- The river (are will be) cleaner if you (don't use won t use) plastic bags and bottles.
- If we (cut will cut) down all of the trees, global warming (will get won't get) worse.

# 159

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. I think our team (wins will win won) tomorrow.
- 2. Morn is so tired. I (helps helping will help) her do the housework.
- 3. My friends and I (will play played play) football next Monday.
- 4. She (went goes will go) shopping with her mom next Thursday.
- 5. The drought will (causes cause caused) water shortage.
- 6. I (will arr not won't) go out tonight. I will stay at home.
- 7. Mom (isn't doasn't won't) cook fish for lunch. She will cook chicken.



- orrow?

  oming) with us,
- What (do will are) you do tomorrow?
- . Ahmed won't (come comes coming) with us.
- 10. What will he (buy bought buys) at the clothes store?
- (Is Does Will) she wear her blue dress tomorrow?
- 12 If you (will want want wanted) to help the environment, you will think for ways to do that.
- 13. If she (go goes doesn't go) to school on foot, she will be healthier.
- 44. Tarek (save saves will save) money if he uses solar energy.
- ff. If dad buys an electric car, he (helped will help helps) the environment.
- 16. If we (throw throws don't throw) garbage, all streets will be clean.
- 17. He (will get up gests up won't get up) early if he goes to bed late.
- 18. If she (comes will come doesn't come) with us, she won't enjoy the rides at the funfair.
- 19. (Will -Are Do) it help to save the planet if we reduce pollution?
- 20. If she (have will have has) a million pounds, she will give some of the money to the poor.
- 21. He won't (is be are) fresh in the morning if he goes to bed late.
- 22. She will have a party if she (win wins doesn't win) the first prize.
- 6 Order the words to make correct sentences:
  - shortage The drought will cause a water.

  - 2. afternoon you go Will this shopping?
  - 3. on Friday go I the beach to won't.

ar - buy - ar	- electric - WIII - Tarek?
i iot, - it rains	s - If - a flood - there - will be.
Write on a	mail to your friend Omar:
AALITE UII A	mair to your mend Omar.
the streets	and the buildings? Are you going to create more
the streets spaces? You email addr	ing to plant trees? How can planting trees affect and the buildings? Are you going to create more our email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your ess is omar@school.net.
the streets spaces? You email addr From:	and the buildings? Are you going to create more our email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your
the streets spaces? You email addr	and the buildings? Are you going to create more our email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your
the streets spaces? You email address.  From: To:	and the buildings? Are you going to create more our email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your
the streets spaces? You email address.  From: To:	and the buildings? Are you going to create more our email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your
the streets spaces? Yo email addr From: To: Subject:	and the buildings? Are you going to create more our email address is adel@hotmail.com. Your



# Lesson 3 Nations working together

Main Vocabulary الأساسية في الدرس





conference agia



agreement اتفاق



معاهدة تحالف - معاهدة



treaty معاهدة



nations cet - أمم



global climate news



global warming ; plans الاحتياس الحراري



ِ خطط



حزب سیاسی

Connect Plus 4



document قَفِيْقَةِ



meeting اجتماع



world leaders قادة العالم

#### Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

the United Nations	sign (٧) الأمم المتحدة	يوقع - يمضي
work together	agree تعمل سورًا	ينمق
terious effort	teenager مجھود جاد	شاب مراهق
ossible	later and	مُنِمَا بعد

# Definitions

conference : a formal meeting where people meet to talk about a topic.

pact: a formal agreement between two people or groups

of people.

party: a group of people who have the same goals and beliefs.

treaty: a formal written agreement between two or more countries.

### Conjugation of Verbs

#### Regular verbs additail clanvi

Present		Past	A Pre	senu	Past
sign	يُؤمُّع	signed	agree to	ىتەق على	agreed to
work together سویًا (مغا)		worked together	summaria	te پُلَخُص - يُوجِز	summarized
ن-يربط connect		connected	reduce	يُقُلِّل - يُخَفَّض	reduced
express	يُغيُّر	expressed	decide	يُفْرِر	decided
plant	يررع	planted	continue	يواصِل - يستم	continued

#### الأفعال عن المنتظمة ما المعالمة المعال

<b>□P</b> £	esent	Past	Prese	TL.	Past
meet	يقابل	met	come from	يأثري من	came from
have	لديه - يمتلك	had	eat	يأكل	ate
do	يفعل	did	become	Shari	became

#### Read and learn

#### Did you know?

عل تعلم؟

The foundation Youth Love Egypt (YLE) has planted thousands of trees along the Nile and canals.

قامت مؤسسة -شباب بتحب مصر- بزراعة الأف من الأشجار بطول النيل روالقنوات.

## The parts of a newspaper report

﴿ آجِزَاءُ التَقْرِيرِ الصَحَفَٰتِ ﴿



The name of the newspaper.

🕡 اسم الصحيقة.

The headline. This is the title of the report.

🗿 عنوان التمرير.

8 The reporter's name.

😉 كاتب التقرير (المراسل).

The lead-in. This is one or two sentences that summarize the report. 🐠 جملة أو جملتين تلخيص لما جاء مُب التقرير،

The body of the report. This is the long part you read.

🤣 موضوءِ التقرير.

6 A picture.

🙃 صورة.

Acaption. This is a description of a picture.

🕜 وصف للصورة أو تعليق عليها.

#### Global Climate News

OF TERMINERS TO STORY STORY Slow Ellmole Change

by Darsen Shabrawi

Climatechangeaffects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem.

The body of the report

lfwe all help, we can slow climate change. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders o from every country in the world met for the United Nations o Climate Change Conference (called COP26) in Glasgow, Scotland. They talked about what they can do to slow climate Continued in Classes change, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting ...

ক্ষেত্ৰ ও ক্ষেত্ৰ ও ক্ষেত্ৰ কৰিছ ও ক্ষেত্ৰ ও



A seption

Genneot Plus 4

213

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement ©. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases © immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.



Another important meeting was COP25 in Madrid, Spain in 2019.

و (الفاق) و (غازات الاحتباس) د الحراري

Greta Thunberg, a teenager from Sweden, asked leaders to do more to slow climate change.

و معاهدات

displace (a

After that, Thunberg became famous all over the world. This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. In this new pact o, countries agreed to do several things. First, they decided to continue with the Paris Agreement. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

Another important topic at the meeting was transportation. Car companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by 2040 so they will make more electric vehicles.

We must all slow climate change. Treaties I like the Paris Agreement are one way for nations to work together to do this.

# Grammar Study 🕰



O تربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالنتيجة. ▶▶▶ ماتين

▶ We use "so" to connect cause/reason and result.

They played too much so they were tired.



🔾 تربط ہین جملتین یعبرا عن التناقض.

We use "but" to connect two different or contrasting ideas.

	112
Lesson	3
Mom wants us to eat healthy food, but I buy lots of sweets every o	lay.
ط بين جملتين بعيرا عن أفكار متشابهه أو ينابع أفيات	Qترب
We use and to connect two similar ideas	
wrote a short story and showed it to my mom.	
	- 0
ستخدم للتخيير أو الاختيار. We use "or" to express choices.	
want to buy a white shirt or a white T-shirt.	
Exercises on Lesson (3)	
Read and complete the text with words from the box:	
plans - Nations - climate - affects	
`	
Climate change 1 everyone living on our planet, s	
we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now makin	g
to work on this problem. If we all help, we can slow	W
8change.	
Manh	dend.
Choose the correct answer: (Vocabu	nary)
1. A (pact - party - treaty) is a formal agreement between two people groups of people.	OF
2 A (treaty - conference - pact) is a formal meeting where people in	n <del>ee</del> t
to talk about a topic.	oais
3. A (pact - party - treaty) is a group of people who have the same g	
and beliefs.  4. A (conference - party - treaty) is a formal written agreement between	een
two or more countries.  The (headline - picture - caption) is the title of the report.	
The (body - lead-in - headline) is one of two sentences that some	narize
the report.	ead.
7. A (picture - caption - headline) is a description of a picture.  1. The (headline - caption - body) of the report is the long part you need to be a caption - body.	
Anddrille - Cabtion - Andria	ead. 🙎

Į,

#### 3 Choose the correct answer:

(Grammar)

- 1. The leaders had a conference (and but so or) they couldn't agree on anything.
- 2. The parties agreed to reduce air pollution (and but so or) plastic waste.
- 3. We need to stop pollution now (and but so or) it will be too late.
- 4. The government decided to stop using fossil fuels (and but so or) they built a wind farm.
- 5. When we burn fossil fuels, it is bad for the environment, (and but so or) we should stop doing it.
- 6. All countries must reduce air pollution (and but so or) water pollution.
- 7. Countries could recycle more plastic (and but so or) find a greener alternative (بدیل).
- Plastic pollution wasn't a problem 50 years ago, (and but so or)
  now it's very serious.
- 9. I wrote a report for my school magazine (and but so or) they published it!
- 10. The world's leaders are talking (and but so or) they haven't signed a treaty yet.
- I couldn't make ful medames (and but so or) koshari for dinner tonight.
- 12. There hasn't been rain in our village for months, (and but so or) now there is a water shortage.
- 13. Oats, falafel, (and but so or) hummus are all plant-based foods.
- 14. Judy loves cooking, (and but so or) she helps her mother in the kitchen.
- 15. Adam does not like helping in the kitchen, (and but so or) he always washes the dishes.
- 16. Do they use solar energy (and but so or) do they burn coal?
- 17. My dad was at a conference last week (and but so or) he was really tired.
- 18. My family recycles paper (and but so or) glass.
- 19. The leaders went to a conference (and but so or) they didn't sign a treaty.
- 20. The children went to the climate change conference (and but so or) they talked about problems in their country.

# Writing & The food we eat & Project

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary











plant-based meal dish وجبة نباتية

appetizer رَ فَاتَحَ شَهِيةً - مَقَبِلاًتُ 🍐 أَكُلَةً

main course الطبق الأساسي



lentils عدس





rheat



dessert الحلو بعد الأكل



drinks مشروبات



burger برجر

# Definitions

: a small dish that you eat at the beginning of a meal \*Ppetizer

#### Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs sachitall (Isabil

Pires	ent	Post	Prese	ent L	Past
answer	يُجيب - يجاوب	answered	shop	ىتسۇق	shopped
remembe	يلدكر - يذكر ٢	remembered	replace	يستبدل	replaced
act	يتمزف	acted	improve	يُحُسُن	improved
need	يحتاج	needed	create	ئىشىئ	created
present	يُمَّدُم • يعرض على	presented	امل include	يتضمن - يش	included
add	يخرص عداد	added	want	يزيد	wanted

# Writing tip!

When we write a newspaper report, we use facts not opinions.

عندما نكثب تقرير في صحيفة, نستخدم حقائق وليس آراء.

facts تقائق in fact من الحقيقة أولاء أولا

- You can use these useful phrases when you write a newspaper report:
  - ▶ In fact, it was their 26<sup>th</sup> meeting.
  - ► For example, the parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius.

#### Liskening







: No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's healthlere than a burger, and also better for the environment.



218

: Why is it better for the environment?





Mom

: Well, some of the food that you can buy comes from different countries. The bread in a burger is made from wheat. Egypt gets most of its wheat from Russia , and that is a long way from Egyptl And a lot of

winituan @

Nagwa

: How does it get here?

a very long way!

8

Mom : Usually by ship or by plane.

Nagwa

: Ah yes, and that is bad for the environment.

7

Mom

: That's right. But koshari is different. Do you remember what is in koshari?

the meat in a burger comes from South America. That is

9

Nagwa

: Yes! It's made with rice, lentils o, chickpeas o, pasta and, er... tomatoes and onions.

1

Mom

: That's right. I can buy most of these things from the local market s. And the market gets all the vegetables and plant-based food s from local farmers. So everything comes from Egypt.

Nagwa

I understand now. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening! And I'll remember that it is healthier and better for the environment than a burger.

# Exercises on Lessons 4 5 6

Read and complete the text with words from the box:

burger - chickpeas - dessert - dish

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box;

environment - healthier - remember - understand

Nagwa ; Hello, Mom.

Mom : Fine. How are you, Nagwa?

Nagwa: I'm hungry. Can we have a burger this evening, please, Mom?

Mom : No, Nagwa. I'm making some koshari. It's 0

than a burger, and also better for the 2 .... . .........

Nagwa: I understand. I'm happy that we're having koshari this evening!

And I'll 6 ... ... ... that it is healthier and better for the

environment than a burger.

Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

drink - dessert - eating - main course

Yara : Hi, Yassin.

Yassin : Hi, Yara.

Yara : What's your favorite food?

Yassin : I like 0 ..... burger.

Yara : What do you prefer for the @ ..... ?

Yassin : I prefer fish and salad for the main course.

Yara ; What about the .... . ...... ?

Yassin : I like chocolate cake for dessert.

4 Order the words to make correct sentences:
1. plants - foods - from - comes - Which?
7
2. eat - often - Which - you - do - foods?
Block (1) 1 / 7
3. food - What - favorite - your - is?
7
4. dishes - are - What - best - the - Egyptian?
5. Egypt - Which - from - comes - food?
6. shop - responsibly - How - we - can - more?
?
7. climate change - can - countries - How - work - to reduce?
···· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Write an email to your friend Huda:
Tell her about your favorite meal. Your favorite dish, appetizer, main
course and dessert. Your email address is jana@gmail.com. Your
friend's email address is <u>huda@gmall.com</u> .
From:
То:
Subject:
PdP dvb11da0v0- 1{};111dddddowy6-cc11dvqfaabb11100c11100c11140w(?)0011146({})doll1d01119011 paffiboa 1140b1 000b1ddddabe1
\$

Term 2

#### Unit 12 Test 6









(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. We need to try to (continue save slow keep) climate change.
- Nations are now making (planes plans plates place) to work on this problem.
- 3. We can (recycle cause make pick up) paper, plastic, and glass at home.
- 4. Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change (Festival - Party - Celebration - Conference).

#### **Listen and complete:**

(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (248) آخر الكتاب.

- 1. ...... happens where there is not enough rain for a long time.
- 2. When drought happens, rivers and lakes become .. ... .....
- 3. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in .....
- 4. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a

#### B Reading (11Ms)

Read and complete the text with the words from the box: (3Ms)

conference – greenhouse gases – global – Agreement

To do this, countries agreed to start reducing 
immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

#### Read the following text and answer the questions below: (4Ms)

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows - floods, tendelides, tsunamis, or glaciers - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more erosion.

#### A Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The waves and currents in the sea can (pollute bum reduce erode) beaches.
- 2 Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in (flood climate change drought deforestation).

#### B Answer these questions:

- When does erosion happen?
- How can humans cause erosion?

# C The Reader (Amir takes action)

5 A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):		(4Ms)
1.Amir's grandma volunteered to help.	(	)
2.Amir and his friends couldn't make a change.	(	)
Choose the correct answer:		
Amir wanted to take (acting - action - photo - message).		
Amir saw the seagull in her (nest - bed - leg - head).		(223
THREE ST		

#### D Writing (11Ms)

#### Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

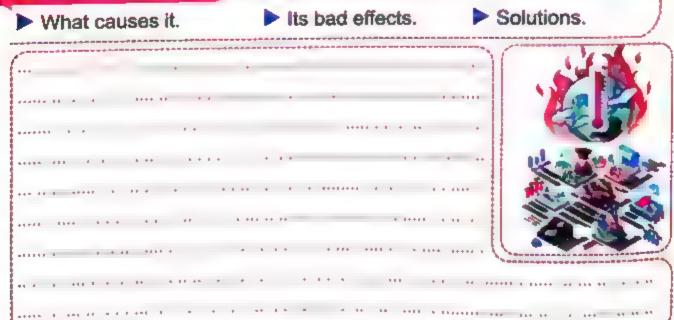
- 1. He has enough money, (so but and or) he can buy the mobile he wants.
- 2. If we drive electric cars, we (reduce reduces won't reduce will reduce) pollution.
- 3. He won't (go goes will go going) to the cinema next weekend, he has to study for his exam.
- 4. She will get a prize if she (writes will write doesn't write write) a good newspaper report.

#### Order the words to make correct sentences:

(2Ms)

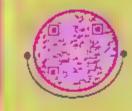
- 1. did agree What to do leaders the?
- 2. slow down change need We climate to.
- By Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding elements:(5Ms)

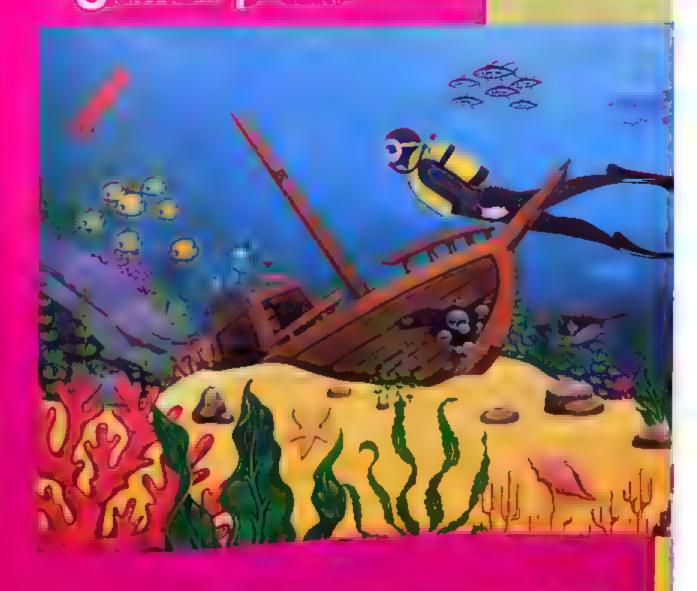
#### ldeas to Help you!





# NON-FICTION READER Shipwrecks calla limat





#### Main Vocabulary

#### الكلمات الأساسية

#### (Paragraph (1)

archaeologists	ancient عنماء آثار	قديم - أثرب
repair (v)	bottom يُعلج	ولق
Mediterranean Sea	clay البحر المتوسط	طين
coast of Egypt	bricks ساحل مصر	قوالب الطوب

#### Paragraph (2)

port	ميناء	earthquakes	رلازل
natural disaster	كارثة طبيعية	tsunamis	تسونامت
bay	خليج	disappeared (v)	اختفت

#### (Paragraph)(3)

artifacts	coins قطع أثرية	عملات معدنية
statues	discovered تماثيل	أكتشف
pottery	dived أواني مخارية	غطس - غاص

#### Paragraph (4)

the temple of Amun	sail (n) معید آمون	شراع
sink (v)	historians نغوص - تغرق	مؤرخين
rowing boat	shipwreck زورق تجدیف	حطام السفينة

#### Paragroph (5)

Asia	Limi crit	rrents	تيارات مائية
Africa	cor أفريقيا	rals	مرجان
Europe	ree اوروبا	efs	شعاب مرجانية

#### Shipwrecks

#### Paragraph (1)

In 2021, archaeologists • were working at a site under the Mediterranean Sea, near the north coast of Egypt. This site was the ancient city of Thônis- Heracleion.





226

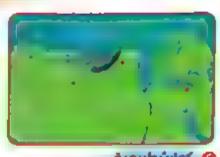
The archaeologists' modern technology helped them to see what was on the bottom of the sea. Under five meters of clay of and bricks of the sea. Under five meters of clay of and bricks of they found a wooden of ship. It was over 2,200 years old.

0 ، في قاع) 3 (طبن) 0 ، قوالب الطوب) 6 ، خشيرة

#### Paragreph (2)

Thônis-Heracleion was a very old city. In the fifth century BCE, it was a very important place for sailors and for people who bought and sold things. It was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria. However, there were lots of natural

disasters o such as earthquakes o and tsunamis o at the time. About 1,200 years ago, in the eighth century CE, the city fell into the sea at Abu Qir Bay o and disappeared o.



👸 كوارث طبيعية

ولازل (المريز) والأرث المريز) (المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز) المريز

و ظیج

Corre (D

#### Paragraph (3)

In 2001, archaeologists discovered the city. When they dived under the water, they found lots of interesting artifacts of at the underwater site, including statues, pottery, and coins.

The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that they found there.

Archaeologists often find things which are old and broken, but this ship

was almost complete.

#### Paragraph (4)

Archaeologists think that the ship was waiting in the port next to the temple of Amun. An earthquake in about 140 BCE destroyed the temple. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink .

The wooden ship was a very large rowing boat and it also had a large sail a. It is about 25 meters long. It was a fast



ال بغرق

🔞 (قارب تجديق

🦺 رشراع.

ship and it had a flat bottom, like ships that traveled on the Nile. It was similar to the style of some ships built in ancient Egypt, so archaeologists and historians are very excited by this discovery. ق حطام السفينة

The shipwreck to in Abu Qir Bay is buried to under clay and bricks, but you can see many other shipwrecks. The Red Sea has lots of places where divers to can go down to wreck sites and explore ships under the water.



ول غواصين

#### Paragraph (5)

Lots of ships use the Red Sea, because it lies between Asia and Africa. It also allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal However, there are storms, reefs &, and strong currents & in the Red Sea which can make it dangerous. Sometimes, ships hit the reefs and sink.



One of the oldest shipwrecks in the Red Sea is the Carnatic. (شعب مرجانية ) It sank in 1869 when it hit the Abu Nuhas reef. It has been under water for over 150 years, and divers can explore the ship and see lots of sea animals.



#### Paragraphi(6)

Another famous shipwreck is the Dunraven, which sank in 1876. There are large holes in the boat so divers can swim inside it. Because these ships have been under the water for a long time, they have become artificial o reefs. They are homes for fish, turtles, dolphins, and other sea animals. Corals live on the metal & surface and there are also lots of different kinds of plants.



You have to be good at diving to visit a shipwreck, and you should go in a group. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the Red Sea and see the amazing sights of

# Questions with their model answers

Read and write T	(True) or F (False):	Activity Spok
1 In The past, people can 2 During the earthquake 4 When archaeologists e	ne to Thônis - Heracleion to farm the land.  bricks fell onto the ship and made it sink.  explored the city, they found lots of statues.  tike the ships that sailed along the Nile.	( ) ( ) ( )
Choose the corre	ct answer:	Activity Book
1. The shipwreck in Abu	Qir is buried under	
a sand and shells	<b>b.</b> clay and bricks	
2. There are lots of place:	s in the Red Sea where divers can explore	
a, shipwrecks	b. ancient cities	
3. Ships can travel from t	the Red Sea to through th	e Suez
Canal.		
a. India	<b>b.</b> Europe	
4The Red Sea can be d	langerous because there are	•
a storms, reefs and str	ong currents.	
L too many big ships		
5. Ships called the Carna	tic and Dunraven sank in	•
■ 1869 and 1876	<b>b.</b> 1909 and 1966	
The Carnatic sank who	en it hit	
the Dunraven	b. the Abu Nuhas reef	
7. When ships have been	under water for a long time, they can beco	me
artificial reefs	b. too dangerous to explore	
Divers should visit a sh	nipwerck .	Zen 2
<b>Q</b> alone	h in groups	25

## 3 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The archaeologists found a wooden ship under clay and bricks.	(
2. Thônis - Heracleion was the largest port in Egypt before Alexandria.	( )
3. Earthquakes and tsunamis are artificial disasters.	( )
4. Thônis - Heracleion fell into the sea at Cairo Bay and disappeared. (	( )
5. Archaeologists found interesting artifacts such as statues, pottery a	nd
coins at the underwater site.	
6. Bricks from the temple fell onto the boat, making it sink.	[ )
7. The Red Sea lies between Europe and Africa.	( )
8. Ships travel to Europe through the Suez Canal.	)
9. Tsunami is a big wave that is started by an earthquake under the wa	iter.
	)

#### Choose the correct answer:

 A (port - school - hospital - temple) is a place where big ships can stay in a town or city.

10. A rowing boat is a boat that moves with oars through the water.

- 2. A (boat sail port coast) is a large piece of cloth that makes a ship move in the wind.
- 3. Earthquakes and tsunamis are natural (ports disasters statues ships).
- (Teachers Doctors Archaeologists Farmers) found lots of Interesting artifacts.
- The shipwreck in Abu Qir Bay is (helped buried waited traveled)
  under clay and bricks.
- 6. When the ships hit the reefs, they (find sink discover help).

- You have to be good at (reading playing tennis diving writing) to visit
  a shipwreck.
- After a long time under the water, the ships became artificial (turtles dolphins - fish - reefs).
- 9. People come from all over the world to go wreck diving in the (Mediterranean Sea - Red Sea - Suez Canal - Abu Qir Bay) to see the amazing sites.
- 10. Storms and strong (dolphins statues turtles currents) can make the Red Sea dangerous.

#### Answers

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F 2- T 3- T 4- T

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- b. clay and bricks	2- a. shipwrecks	3- b. Europe	4- a. storms, reefs and strong currents
5- a. 1869 and 1876	6- b. the Abu Nuhas reef	7- a. artificial reefs	8- b. in groups

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

P				
1 T	O T	2 -	A	15- T
[ 1-	2-	J-	4-	J- 1
0				40 T
16- T	7 E	IR. T	19- 1	110-1
	17.	0-	0	1 - 1

Choose the correct answer:

1- port	2- sail	3- disasters	4- Archaeologists	5- buried
6- sink	7- diving		9- Red Sea	10- currents

- Coron

# FICTION READER Amir takes action

أمير ينخد إحراء



By Scot Esposito
Illustrated by Mike Lace

#### Characters

#### الشخصيات



She is Amir's Grandma. She cooks food and hangs up the clothes with Amir. She helps Amir to solve the problem of the seagull.

هي جدة أمير وتقوم بطهي الطعام وتعليق الملابس مع أمير هب تساعد أمير لكن ريحل مشكلة طائر النورس.



He is a kind boy. He helps his Grandma with the laundry He wants to help the seagull on top of the neighbor's building.

**هو ولد طيب يساعد جدله في غسل الملابس. وهو يريد مساعدة طائر البورس 'لموجود رغلت سطح مبلت الجيران.** 



He is Amir's friend. He wants to help the seaguil, too. He went to his dad's grocery store to show him the picture of the seaguil and to make him use biodegradable bags.

هو صديق أمير ويريد مساعدة طائر التورس أيضًا القددسة على حادر بالمساعدة طائر التورس أيضًا القددسة على حادر بالمساعدة طائر التورس ويطلب مله أن يستعمل أكراس خطف



She is Amir's friend. She wants to help the seaguil and solve the problem of using plastic bags. She went to her dad at the market to show him the picture of the seaguil.

هي صديقة أمير وتريد مساعدة طائر النورس وحل مشكلة «سند» مما السوق الكب برية صوية صائر المناسب



She is Amir's friend. She sent e-mails to her cousins in the village to help in making the river clean.

هي صديقة أمير. لقد أرسلت رسائل البريد الإلكتروني تأولاد عمها مي الفرية كي إيساعدوا في جعل اللهر نظيفًا.



She is Dalia's cousin. She was happy to help in her village with the plastic problem in the river.

هي ابلة عم داليا. وكانت سعيدة بالمساعدة في قرينها لحل مشكلة البلاستيك مي النهر.





He has a grocery store. He felt sad when he saw the picture of the seaguil. He decided to help and use biodegradable bags.

لديه محل بقائة، وقد شعر بالحزّن عندما رأى هورة طائر النورس وقرر المساعدة رحرواستخدام أكياس قابلة للتحلل.

where we will prove the first the second of the second of



He works at the market. When he saw the picture of the seagull, he asked the fishermen to help in taking the plastic out of the river.

هو بعمل في السوق. علدما رأى صورة طائر النورس طلب من الصيادين المساعدة في إخراج البلاستيك من النهر.



It's a bird. It lives near the sea and eats fish. It landed in a nest on top of Amir's neighbor's building. There was a plastic bag around its leg.

هو طائر بعبش بالقرب من البحر ويأكل السمك القد هبط على عش فوق سطح مبين جيران أمير وكان هناك كيس بلاستيكي حول ساقه.

#### Picture Dictionary













land تهبط



a roof







سطد



#### Main Vocabulary

#### الكلمات الأساسية

check (V)	see تنمَّت نظرهٔ	עניט
wash (n)	took غسیل	أخذ
is finished	beautiful اللحب	جميل
dothes	Nile ملابس	النيل
village	below	أسفل - تحت

'Amir, can you check the washing machine ? I think the wash to is finished. To

'Yes, it's finished, Grandma. I'll take the dothes out for you.





Amir took the laundry o up to the roof o, From there, he could see the beautiful o Nile and the village o below o him.

🚯 (لافسیل 😵 (ای السطح، 😉 جمیل)

🔾 اقرية: 😉 السفل:

#### Questions with their model answers

#### Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1. Amir can't check the washing machine.
- 2. Amir can check the washing machine.
- 3. The wash is finished.
- 4. Amir took the bread out.
- Amir took the clothes out.
- Amir took the laundry up to the garden.
- 7. Amir took the laundry up to the roof.
- 8. Amir could see the beautiful Nile.
- Amir could see the Pyramids below him.
- 10. There was a sea below him.
- 11. There was a village below Amir.
- 12. Amir helped his grandma cook dinner.



#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Amir (can can't is lsn't) check the washing machine.
- 2. Amir took the (bread shopping bags clothes) out.
- 3. The wash is (started finished went finish).
- 4. Amir took the (fish grandma laundry village) up to the roof.
- 5. Amir took the laundry up to the (garden Nile roof ground).
- 6. Amir could see the (sea Nile city car) below him.
- 7. Amir could see the (village sea pyramids men) below him.

#### Answers

#### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F	2-	T	3-	T	4-	F	5- T	6- F
7- T	8-	T	9-	F	10-	F	11- T	12- F

#### 2 Choose the correct answer:

1-	can	2- clothes	3- finished	4- laundry
		6- Nile	7- village	

## Part (2)

#### Main Vocabulary

#### الكلمات الأساسية

	to to the		
look down	ينظر لأسفل	women	نساء
trucks	شاحنات	floating	طافية
transport (v)	يلقل	river	نھر
bottles	إجاجات	neighbor	جار
hang up	يعلق	nodded	هزت - اومات براسها
nature	طبيعة	horrible	غظيع
respect (v)	نحترم	in trouble	فب مأزق
noticed ,	لاحظ	pick	بلتقط
poor bird	طائر مسكين	felt	شغرت

Amir looked down . Trucks transported e plastic bottles of water and women carried their shopping home from the market in plastic bags o. He could also see plastic bottles floating o down the river.

(مَرْ لَاسْمَلْ فِي الْمُلْكُ وَ الْجَادِاتِ الْاسْتَادِينَ الْ

﴿ اکتاس بلاستیکی ﴿ طَامُینَ





'Let's hang up o these clothes quickly. It's really hot up here today,' said Grandma.

(dia) ()



A large seagull o landed o in a nest o on top of neighbor's o building. 'Look at the seagull, Grandma! She's so beautiful, said Amir. Grandma nodded o her head. 'Yes, she is,' Grandma answered, 'All of nature o is beautiful. We must respect o it."

🕦 ْطَائِر النورس 👩 تعبط 🔞 غش

👌 (جَارُ 🤞 أومات برأسما 💽 الطبيعة

🕜 ، لحترمه)





Amir then noticed o something horrible o: there was a plastic bag around the seagull's leg. 'Oh no! She's in trouble o,' said Amir.

🛈 الأحظ 🧿 فَظيع 🔞 في مأزق

Amir's tablet was on the table where he sometimes does his homework in the evening. He picked o it up and took a picture of the poor bird . Amir felt sad o.

🕦 اَلتَمْطه 😢 التَمْط صورة 👩 اِلطائر المسكينَ

💽 شعر بالحزن



#### Questions with their model answers

	_	· ,			
	Dood	and we	A. T. I'm.		P (m . )
7	Keau	and Mi	ite I I I	ruei or	F (False):
· **				,	1. 4.00/.

Trucks transported chicken in plastic bags.

2. Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags.	(	)
3. Amir could see plastic bags floating down the river.	(	)
Amir could see plastic bottles floating down the river	- (	- 1

- The weather was hot.

  ( )
- 6. Amir and his Grandma hang up clothes. ( )
- 7. Amir nodded his head. ( )
- 8. All of nature is terrible. (
  9. The seagull was in trouble. (
- 10. Amir took a picture of the seagull with his Grandma's phone.
- 11. Amir was upset when he saw the seagull with a plastic bag around its leg.
- 12. Grandma doesn't like seagulls and thinks they are ugly.
- 13. Amir takes a photo of the seagull with a plastic bag around its leg. 🙉 ( )

#### 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Trucks transported (metal wood plastic glass) bottles.
- 2. Amir and his grandmother hanged up the (clothes cloth shoes roof).
- 3. There was a plastic (bottle plant bag nest) around the seaguli's leg.
- 4. The seagull was in (trouble sea Nile ground).
- Amir's tablet was on the (ground table roof desk).
- 6. Amir does his homework in the (afternoon morning night evening).
- 7. Amir felt (happy sad tired hungry) when he saw the poor bird.

#### Answers

#### Read and write T (True) or F (False):

					1	
4 -	0 0	O F	4 7	E. T	6. T	7_ E
1- F	2-	3- 1	14- 1	0.	0- 1	7-
8- F	0 T	140 E	144. T	112- F	113-1	
0-	9-	10- F	114- 4	7 800		l

#### Choose the correct answer:

#### Part (3)

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

have to	يجب أن	take action	يتخذ إجراء
harm (v)	ئۇدى	discovered	اكتشف
smart (adj)	ركش	store (n)	ملجر
understand	مقفي	riverbanks	ضفتب البهر
texted back	رد برسالهٔ نصیهٔ	instead	بدإر
explain	يفسر	fishermen (n)	מוורוני
volunteered	Čeghî	cousins (n)	أولاد العم، (الحال)
fold (v)	ئېرى - ىطوش	heads	顶克伽

Grandma saw how Amir was feeling. She put her arm around him. 'It'll be OK, Amir.' 'No, it won't. We have to o do something to help. People are using too much plastic and it's harming o the birds.'

'You're a smart o boy, Amir. How can we help other people understand o this?' his grandma asked him.

TIME OF THE O







That night, Amir sent • the picture of the seagull to some of his friends from school.

They were all very worried about • the bird.

'We need to help her,' his friend Waleed texted back o. 'But what can we do?'

🕕 رأرسل، 😉 ر قلقین علمہ 🚯 رید پرسالۃ نَمْیا)

Amir wanted to take action . He started researching on the internet and discovered that people use billions of plastic bags and bottles in Egypt every year. A lot of them end up in the Nile or the sea. So, he sent a message to his friends: (Hi everyone. We need to make a change of Let's meet after school tomorrow to have the first meeting of our new volunteer group of . Save the River!)



🥱 (تُحِدِّتُ يَغْيِيرُ 🗿 ، اجتماع 🕜 مجموعة المتطوعينُ





The next day, Amir, Waleed, and some other friends met at Amir's house. They talked about different things that they could do. Amir took notes and on his tablet:

- Use cloth bags o. We can give them to people at the market o.
- Use biodegradable bags o. Waleed's dad can use them at his store.
- Clean up the riverbanks o. Anissa's dad can ask the fishermen o to help us.
- Contact a children in other towns. Dalia can send emails to her cousins.

🛈 تَفَايِلُورُ 🥹 (دون ملاحظائغُ 🐧 (أكباس قِمائلًا) 🔇 (أسوق) 🕤 (أكباس قابلة لِتَجِيلُ) 🐧 رَفَفِني النِهَا

🗗 میادین 🔞 اتصل

Amir explained his ideas to his grandma.

She volunteered o to help, too. 'I have some old cotton cloth o, Amir. I can sew o some shopping bags o for you.

Will that help?' 'Yes, Grandma, thank you! That will help a lot!





Waleed went to his dad's grocery store 0.

'Dad, please help us. Let's stop using plastic bags in our store. We can use biodegradable ones instead 9.'

'Waleed, why should we do that?' his father asked.

Waleed showed him Amir's picture of the seagull. His dad looked sad.

'OK, Waleed. I'll help you. We'll start using these biodegradable bags. We must help the river.'

🚺 زملجر بقالة 🔞، بدلًا عنها

Anissa's dad works at the market. She showed him Amir's picture of the seagull and told him all about their plans 0.

'I'll ask the fishermen to help us take the plastic out of the river. They'll help us. The water is important of for all of us,' he said.







Dalia sent emails to all her cousins of they lived in other villages of around Egypt. 'Dalia, this is a great idea of her cousin Mariam wrote back of 'We will be happy to help in our village, too.'

(آولاد القم ﴿ (مُربَ ﴿ (مُكرَهُ رائعهُ)
 (گنبت اها مرة احرى)

A couple of days later, Amir went onto his grandma's roof to get her laundry. He saw the colorful o cloth she was going to use to sew the cotton shopping bags. He started folding o it and putting it in the laundry basket o.

🕡 (مَلُونَ) 👩 رَبطوماً 👩 إسلة العسيلَ





Then he saw the seagull in her nest. He remembered the plastic around her leg. Suddenly, two baby seagulls put their heads out of the nest. Amir smiled. He knew that he and his friends together could make a change o.

🕡 (لُدِينَ) 👩 (فيعار طائر النورس: 🔞 رؤوس)

ن مَعَلَى ﴿ لِحِدِثُوا تَفْيِيرُ ﴾

#### Questions with their model answers

## Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(	244)	- Step	Ahe	ad
,		A	(	)
	21. Amir thinks that people are using too much plastic in his villa	age.		
	20. The seagull had two babies.	AB	(	)
	19. Dalia took pictures of seagulls and sent them to her friends.	AB	(	)
	18. Amany and Waleed's father wanted to help.	AB	(	)
	17. Amir's friends didn't want to help him with his plan.	AB	(	)
	16. Amir decided to organize a recycling project.	AB	(	)
	15. Grandma thought that Amir should do something.	A	(	)
	biodegradable shopping bags.	30	(	)
	14. Amir's grandma used some old pieces of cotton cloth to main	ke		
		SÎ	(	)
	13. Waleed's dad was sad because he liked to use plastic bags	at his	stor	e.
	12. Mariam is one of Dalia's cousins.	S B	(	)
	plan.	S B	(	}
	11. Waleed, Anissa, Dalia and Amir met at Amir's house to talk a	about t	heir	
	10. Amir and his friends couldn't make a change.		(	)
	9. Amir and his friends could make a change.		(	)
	8. One baby seaguil put its head out of the nest.		(	)
	7. The water is important for all of us.		Ċ	)
	6. We can't use biodegradable bags.		Ċ	í
	5. Amir's grandma volunteered to help.		Ċ	)
	4. Amir sent messages to his friends.		Ċ	)
	3. Amir didn't want to take action.		Ċ	)
	2. Too much plastic is harming the birds.		į.	Ó
	1. People are using too much plastic.		(	-)

22. Amir can't find out what happens to the plastic waste in Egypt.

A		
A'B	- (	- 1
		- 7

23. Waleed's father decides to stop using biodegradable bags. 🔎 (

24. Dalia doesn't know how to help Amir.

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Grandma saw how Amir was (sleeping feeling laughing asking).
- Using too much plastic is (harming helping improving developing) the birds.
- 3. Amir wanted to take (money action photo message).
- 4. Amir took (roofs things notes bags) on his tablet.
- 5. Grandma volunteered to (swim sleep help go).
- 6. The (bag garbage litter water) is important for all of us.
- 7. We will be (sad happy tired angry) to help in our village.
- 8. Amir went onto his grandma's (roof room house garden) to get her laundry.
- Amir and his friends could make a (trip nothing coffee change).
- 10. Amir saw the seagull in her (nest bed leg head).

#### Answers

#### 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

	2- T						
9- T	10- F	11- T	12- T	13- F	14- T	15- T	16- F
17- F	18- F	19- F	20- T	21- T	22- F	23- F	24- F

#### Choose the correct answer:

1- feeling	2- harming	3- action	4- notes	5- help
6- water	7- happy	8- roof	9- change	10- nest



# Listening Scripts



We help to protect our environment. There are kinds of energy we can use which are renewable. They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run, they are better.



There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live here, so it is sparsely populated. It is a quiet place to live. The urban environment is densely populated. Most people in the world live in this kind of environment. There are lots of buildings, and there can be a lot of traffic, too.





Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simble. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on February 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunnise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the room inside. There are four statues inside the temple.



A traditional Egyptian meal is served with people sitting together around a table. Atypical meal has rice, a kind of vegetable stew, soup, stuffed vegetables, and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very generous and are very happy when you ask for more food. This means you enjoyed their delicious meal!



Luxor is full of different monuments from ancient Egypt. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings. Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt.

# Test

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more fertile. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

Questian 💆



An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages. An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.



As a fourth-grade student, I like to write short stories and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also interested in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school club is a perfect idea.

Connect Plus 4

247

#### **Listening Script**



I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to.

Question



The problem with transportation that uses gasoline is that it burns fossil fuels, and these are bad for the environment. So today, people are developing cleaner forms of transportation like electric cars. There are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.

Question



Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem.

We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference. They talked about what they can do, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.

Question 1



Drought happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in danger. When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a water shortage.

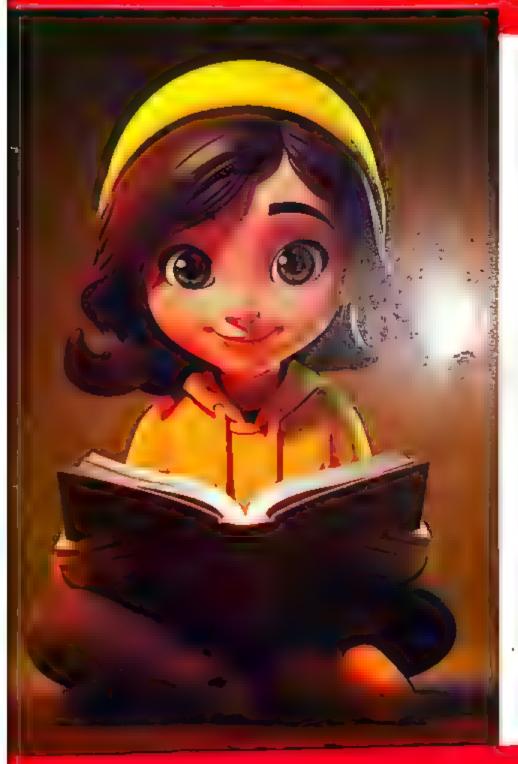
Term 2

248

- Step Ahead

# Steppa lecicisories Together to a bright future

# CONNECT



Units Revision
& Revision Tests
& Answer Key







Revision on Unit 7 - All around the world

3

Revision on Unit 8 - Customs and traditions

13

Revision on Unit 9 - Our culture

24)

Revision on Unit 10 - Connecting the world

34)

Revision on Unit 11 - On the road!

44

Revision on Unit 12 - A global challenge

54

Part 2

**Revision Tests** 

63

Parit 3

Listening Scripts

81



Answer Key

(87

# Revision on Unit 7

#### 1. Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

sparsely - densely - rural - animals

Hive in a village in the ① ... environment. There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more ② ... and plants. Not many people live here, so it is ① populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but it's a quiet place to live.

#### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

fuels - cleaner - reduce - transportation

Today, we know more about pollution than we used to, and we know how important it is to ① .... it. Scientists are finding new ways to travel and to use fuels. We can also change the things we do - for example, we can walk, cycle or use public ② instead of using cars. We also need to think about how we can use less plastic. Lots of people are trying to make our world a ③ place!

#### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

solar - tidal - desert - electricity

There are many types of environments on Earth, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, a hot energy from the sun, and there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean •

Term 2	

Talt 7
4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:
location - generate - dam - electricity
The High Dam was finished in 1971. It also a terms the Paler Nile of Occupant made this a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from flooding. The 3 has twelve large turbines inside. It generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!
57 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:
Antarctic - sunny - trees - windy
I watched a TV program about the polar environment. There are two of these environments in the world, the Arctic and the cold and and there, with a lot of ice. Since the have found ways to live there, but there aren't any and the conflowers.
6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:  atmosphere - polluted - emissions - climate
Trees and forests are very important in protecting our planet. Some of the things that people do make carbon dioxide ①
Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:
Chemicals - podcast - air pollution - plastic pollution
Presenter : Hello, and welcome to our Clean World •
Salwa: It's a great pleasure to be with you today.
Presenter: What causes 9?

[1]

Salwa

: Driving cars and trucks and burning fuels which cause

carbon dioxide emissions.

Presenter: And what causes water pollution?

Salwa : 6 ..... from factories or farms go into rivers or

the sea and cause water pollution

Presenter: Do you think we can succeed in stopping pollution?

Salwa : I think we should do what we can to stop it

#### 8/ Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- It's hard for people and animals to survive in a (coastal mountainous rainforest) environment
- 2 There are always more animals than people in a (rural urban city) environment
- 3 There are lots of trees iplants howers, and animals in a polar desert rainforest) environment
- (4) The (rural urban mountainous) environment is noisy and has a lot of traffic.
- (5) The (desert coastal polar or annual continues very little water
- 6 The (polar rural mountainous) environment is the Arctic and Antarctic
- (8) The polar environment is (sparsely populated densely populated full)
- (Water pollution Air pollution Climate change) is when water is dirty because of chemicals or plastic
- (iii) (Emissions Carbon dioxide Fuel) is something we burn to make heat of power.
- (Climate change Air pollution Water pollution) is when the air is dirty; this can make people or animals sick.
- (Fuel Carbon dioxide Emissions) is a gas in the atmosphere known as CO<sub>2</sub>.



AHEAD



(A) (Carbon dioxide - Emissions - Fuel) are made by factories, cars and lorries; they can cause air pollution.

We can get (hydroelectricity - solar energy - wind energy) from moving water.

We can get water from (summer - fall - springs).

It's very hot inside (rivers - volcanoes - dams).

When we burn (renewable - non-renewable - geothermal) fuels, carbon dioxide goes out into the atmosphere.

(Coal - Non-renewable energy - Renewable energy) from natural resources is better for the environment and it won't run out.

Some countries have a lot of coastal environments and they can create (solar energy - wind energy - tidal energy).

We can create (wind energy - solar energy - geothermal energy) from the sun.

We can create wind power from (solar panels - water turbines - wind turbines).

You should turn (of - on - off) lights to save electricity.

Five hundred and five hundred is one (billion - million - thousand).

## GRAMMAR REVISION

#### Choose the correct answer:

1 It (am - is - are) raining heavily now.

2 Dad (am - is - are) traveling to Aswan today.

3 We (am - is - are) doing our homework.

She (am - is - are) making us a chocolate cake.

(5) They (am - is - are) buying some sweets at the supermarket.

6 You (am - is - are) walking quickly. Slow down, please.

1 (am - is - are) looking at the birds in the trees.

8 He (am - is - are) having a nice time in Luxor.

Mom is (heat - heats - heating) some water for cooking.

TEP AHEA!





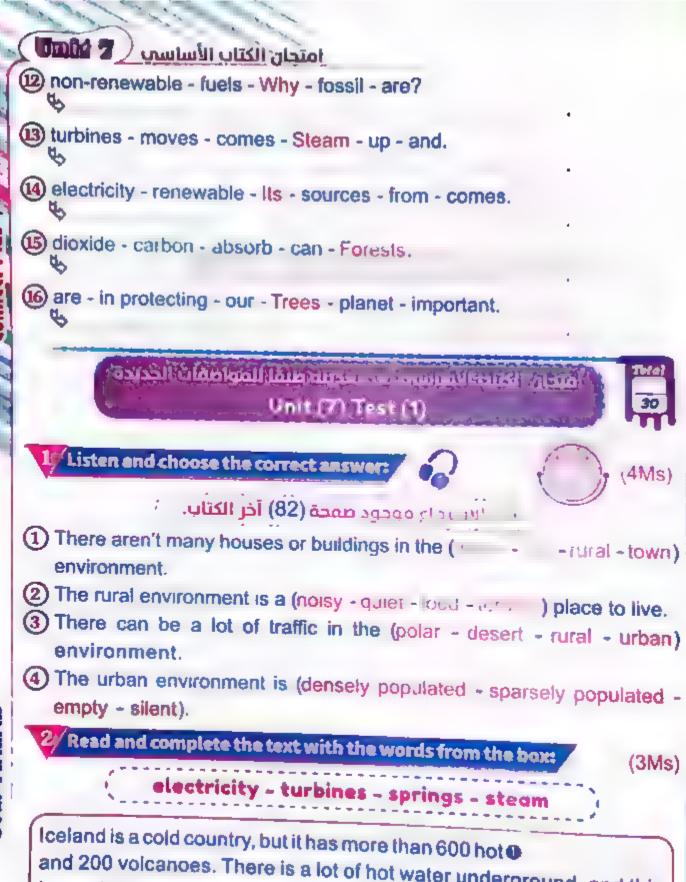
10 We are (traveling -	travel - travels) to El-Fayoum at the	moment

- 11) Look! Some farmers are (burns burning burn) some dead plants.
- What (have are do) you doing?
- (13) (Is Will Does) she washing the clothes?
- (4) Are you (come comes coming) with us?

#### W.Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1) animals the rainforest Lots of live environment in.
- 2 swamps environment There are coastal the in.
- 3 survive The animals clever to find ways.
- live the in Most people environment urban.
- 5 to travel environment the mountainous difficult in It's.
- 6 I do What to help the environment can?
- are pollution helping They stop to.
- 8 resources from natural get We energy renewable.
- 1 tidal energy We water moving get from.
- move turbines water The wind make or.
- hot the It's under ground very.





Iceland is a cold country, but it has more than 600 hot and 200 volcanoes. There is a lot of hot water underground, and this is used to heat homes and to make electricity. When water gets hot, it makes Engineers In Iceland can make holes down to the hot water underground. Then steam comes up and it moves In Iceland can make electricity.



#### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

There are two of the polar environments in the world; the Arctic and the Antarctic. It is cold and windy in this environment, with a lot of ice. Some animals have found ways to live there, but there aren'. any trees or flowers. There aren't many houses or buildings in the rural environment, so that place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live there, so it is sparsely populated. It can have lots of different kinds of weather, but It's a quiet place to live.

#### A Choose the correct answers

- 1 The Arctic and the Antarctic are examples of the (rural polar coastal - urban) environment.
- (2) There aren't any (animals trees people ice) in the polar environment.
- 3 Some (animals trees flowers plants) have found ways to live in the polar environment.

#### B Answer these questions.

- (4) How many people live in the polar environment? 🦠
- (5) What is the weather like in the polar environment? \$\infty\$

#### The Reader (Shipwrecks)

#### 4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1) Archaeologists were working at a site under the Red Sea.
- 2) Thônis Heracleion was a very old city.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- (3) The Red Sea can be dangerous because there are strong (ships currents - shells - bricks) in it.
- When ships have been under water for a long time, they can become artificial (storms - reefs - boats - tsunamis).

#### 5 Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1 Listen, they (talk talks are talking talked) about different environments.
- (2) Manar (am is are were) coming with us.
- (3) What's Morn (cook cooked cooks cooking)?

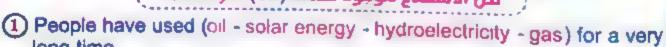




STEP AHEAD

لص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب.

long time.



(4Ms)

(2) Hydroelectricity means using the energy from (walking - moving - jumping noisy) water.

3 The Ancient Egyptians used hydroelectricity to turn the (wheels waterwheels - bikes - carts).

(4) We can use hydroelectricity to generate (waterwheels - farming machines - electricity).





The High Dam was finished in 1971. It uses water from the River electricity. The location of Aswan made this Nile to 0 a good place to build the dam, because it could stop the River Nile from a inside. It . The dam has twolve large • generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year!

#### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. These are burned in factories or used to make homes and buildings warm. However, they are non-renewable; when they run out, we can't find or make more of them. Fossil fuels are made from the remains of very old plants and animals that lived on Earth a long time ago. When we burn them, a lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.

#### AD

- (1) Fossil fuels are (renewable non-renewable continuous solar).
- Possil fuels will (continue store last run out).

1 41.27 6.27

3 Fossil fuels are things like (fire - solar energy - coal - sunshine).

#### B Answer these questions:

- What are fossil fuels made from?
- What happens when we burn fossil fuels?

#### The Reader (Shipwrecks)

#### Read and write Tr(True) or Fr(False):

(4Ms)

- 1) In the past, people came to Thonis Heracleion to farm the land (
- Ouring the earthquake, bricks fell onto the ship and made it sink. (



### Revision on Unit 8

Total Daniel	Shell assessed and a	he text with the words fro	m the hove
The second of	anu complete i		III file navi

#### spring – sunrise – celebrating – sunset

#### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### sights - Pyramids - Nile - Temple

#### 3/Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### spices - cooked - beef - looked

# (Cron

Umbi 8

#### 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

lantern - traditional - decorate - festival

Sham El-Nessim is a 

for the start of spring and it is very old. Before the day of the festival, we spend time preparing lots of different 

food, often until sunset! We also boil

eggs, then paint and 0 them in different colors to make them look heautiful

#### 5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

famous - traditions - host - guests

Egypt is a great country to visit. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian

Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

#### G Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box.

leather - linen - sandals - sleeve

Presenter: Hello, and welcome to our Radio Show.

Dr Samir : Hello!

Presenter: What did ancient Egyptians wear on their feet?

Dr Samir : They wore 0

Presenter: What were these sandals made from?

Dr Samir : They were made from 6

Presenter: What other things did people wear at that time?

Dr Samir : They were loose white ...

1147

### Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

- 1 Farmers go to work at (sunrise sunset evening) and go home in the afternoon.
- 2 Children love to ride at the (library school fairground) during Sham El-Nessim.
- 3 People (sell sacrifice feed) a sheep at Eid Al-Adha.
- 4 During festivals, people (decorate celebrate create) with their friends and family.
- 5 Sham El-Nessim is a happy (festival new year prayer).
- (Morning Sunset Sunrise) is soon. It's getting dark.
- During Eid Al-Adha, people go to the mosque for (decorating prayers pilgrimage).
- We are (grateful careful useful) that we are healthy.
- (Sunrise Lanterns Rides) are pretty and bright in the night time!
- (ii) Eid Al-Fitr is an important (fairground pilgnmage foastival) for Muslims.
- (i) Muslims go to the Hajj (fest val feast p-gr care) in Zu Elhijja.
- Egyptians are good (guests nosts / //). They give their visitors lots of foods and drinks.
- 13 This (recipe dish meal) shows you how to make sayadeya.
- 14 Fatta is dad's favorite (bread dish ptar ).
- 15 We eat three (plates recipes meals) every day.
- The temples of Abu Simble are amazing (cit es J shes sights) in Egypt.
- My grandpa is very (generous old poor). He gives us money every day to buy sweets.
- (Teachers Hosts Guests) come to our house when we have a party.
- 19 They (invent invite interview) lots of people when they have a party.
- @ Giza is famous (of for from) the Pyramids and the Sphinx.

### GRAMMAR REVISION

#### S Choose the correct answers

- 1 This is a/an (quickly easy easily) game.
- 2 I can play this game (easily easy quick).
- 3 He (live lives is living) in Port Said.



#### Umit 8

- 4 We (go are going goes) to our grandma's house every weekend.
- Grandma often (make is making makes) us cakes and delicious food.
- Grandpa always (is giving give gives) some of his money to the poor.
- She (isn't doesn't don't) like fatta.
- We (aren't don't doesn't) go shopping on Sunday.
- Nada doesn't (play plays playing) computer games. She prefers doing sports.
- What does Ehab (wear wears wearing) for school?
- (1) (Do Does Is) he help at home?
- (Are Does Do) you like painting?
- (3) My grandpa often (wear wears doesn't wear) galabeya.
- 14 Today we (talk talks are talking) to the head teacher.
- He (celebrate is celebrating celebrates) his birthday on the first of April every year.
- What does he (eat eats eating) for breakfast?
- Look! She (celebrate celebrates is celebrating) Eid Al-Fitr with her family.
- At the moment, Adam (is helping help helps) his mom make ful medames.
- 19 They often (eat eats are eating) chicken and rice.
- Today they (make are making makes) a vegetarian recipe.

#### 9/Order the words to make correct sentences:

- of spring the start is The festival for.
- 2 ancient Sham El-Nessim The celebrated Egyptians.
- 3 is sunny The weather warm usually and.
- up at sunrise wake always I.

- 6 eat We games play and nice food.
- 6 fairgrounds are children There for with rides.
- (7) lasts days four for Eld Al-Adha.
- 8 give out to family We our meat.
- 9 to for prayers mosque go the We.
- you How Eid Al-Adha do celebrate?
- recipes her get does How Grandma?
- make recipes Can these all you?
- dish This meat any has never.
- layers and has bread of rice Fatta.
- use Which any doesn't meat dish?
- Egyptians -- wear -- ancient -- dld -- white clothes -- Why?
- (B) can You in Egypt see sights amazing.

?

أمتحان الكتاب الأساسري بعد تعديلة ظبمًا للمواصفات الجديدة Unit (8) Test (2)

#### Ir Listen and choose the correct answer:



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب. 1 You can see the temples of Abu Simble near (Sohag - Giza - Cairo -

Aswan).

2 People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival (once - twice - three times - four times) a year.

3 There are (four - five - six - seven) statues inside the temple.

7 People celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on (January -February - March - April) 22nd.

#### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: / (3Ms)

#### dish - share - delicious - recipes

: You have lots of different meals in your book, Grandma! Aya

recipes with family Grandma: Yes, I do. I often 0

and friends.

: Can you make all of these 2 Aya

Grandma: Yes, I can. And I can easily show you, tool

: Hmm, that's difficult. There are so many recipes to choose Aya

from.

Grandma: Don't worry. It will be easy. What would you like to make?

: I like to try new things. These look 6 Aya

Grandma: OK! Let's start now.

#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for four days, and it is a very important Islamic festival. It celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We give out meat to our family and friends. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends.

2	4/A Read and write T (True) on F (False):	(4Ms)
	A volcano destroyed the temple of Amun	
	2 The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that endivers	fou <b>nd</b> .
	Be Choose the correct answer:	
	3 The ship was waiting in the (street - port - airport - station) nex temple of Amun.	t to the
	4 Lots of ships use the (Dead - Mediterranean - Red - Caribbean	ı) Sea.
	5 Choose the correct answer:	(5Ms)
HEAD	Men and women often (are wearing - wear - wears - does galabeya.	ı't wear)
STEP AHEAD	② Today, I (talk - talks - doesn't talk - am talking) to Dr Samir. ③ She (celebrate - don't celebrate - is celebrating - celebrate wedding day on the fourth of July every year.	ites) her
•	4 What does he (eat - eats - ate - eating) for lunch?	
	(5) I can write the paragraph (easily - easy - quick - careful).	
	6/ Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:	(3Ms)
Lerm 7	often - jewelry - Ancient - beautiful - wore - Egyptians.	(4777
	201	

امِتِجِانِ الكتابِ الأساسيِ ﴿ الْكَتَابِ الأساسيِ ﴿ الْكَتَابِ الْأَسَاسِينِ ﴿ الْكَتَابِ الْأَسَاسِينِ ﴿ الْكَتَابُ

family and friends.

By Answer these questions:

4 What do people eat at Eid Al-Adha?

5 What do people wear at Eid Al-Adha?

A Choose the correct answer?

1 Eid Al-Adha usually lasts for (three - four - five - six) days

2 At Eid Al-Adha, many people saurifice a (bird horse hen - sheep)

The Reader (Shinwrecks

3 At Eid Al-Adha, we give out (fatta - meat - kahk - cookies) to our

2 now, - What - Heba	- doing - you - are?
----------------------	----------------------

- (3) up at sunrise 1 wake always.
- Write an email of (40) words to your British friend Tom:

(6Ms)

Tell him about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. What does it celebrate? When does it happen? What do people do at Eid Al-Adha? How do you celebrate Eid Al- Adha with your family? Your email address is ahmed@hotmail.com Your friend's email address is tom@vahoo.com

From:			
To:			
Subject:			
		P 4 4 P - + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + + +	** 1
	* **		+
		+	***

<u>िप्रचिश्व</u> विन्कु स्थि

## Unit 8 Test





1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (82) آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian (foods people sights traditions).
- 2 Egyptian people are (generous famous useful careful) for welcoming visitors.
- (3) If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a (present - dish - meal - bag).
- 4 The (visitor guest host tourist) usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.

امتخان ملحق الكتاب 🐧 👫 📆

2/ Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

#### sights - generous - Pyramids - visitors

Tamer: Welcome to Egypt

Tourist: Thank you.

Tamer . What places did you visit in Egypt?

Tourist : I visited the O of Giza.

Tamer : Do you like Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, it has lots of amazing 9

Tamer : Do you like the Egyptian people?

Tourist: Yes, they are 6 .....

#### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring and it is very old. The ancient Egyptians also celebrated it as a festival of creation and new life. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. Because it is the start of spring, the weather at Sham El-Nessim is usually sunny and warm.

#### A Choose the correct answer

- 1 Hove celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my (friends family teachers neighbors).
- 2 Sham El-Nessim is for the start of (winter summer fall spring).
- 3 Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter (Friday Saturday Sunday Monday).

#### B Answer these questions

- Why did the ancient Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim?
- S How is the weather like at Sham El-Nessim?

#### The Reader (Shipwrecks)

#### 4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

4Ms)

1) When archaeologists explored the city, they found lots of statues. (





2 The wooden ship looks like the ships that sailed along the Nile.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Earthquakes and tsunamis are natural (ships ports disasters statues).
- When the ships hit the reefs, they (help find sink discover).

#### Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1) He (never often sometimes always) eats pizza. He doesn't like it.
- We (visited visits visit visiting) our grandparents every Saturday.
- 3 People who live near the coast (often make make often often makes) makes often) savadeva.
- (4) (Do Does Is Are) Ali wear sandals?
- 5) She draws pictures (quick careful good well)

#### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1 on do What special days wear you?
- (2) in Egypt -- people You meet can friendly.
- 3 island you How this did get to?

Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

"Eld Al-Adha"

#### Ideastito help you:

6

(Islamic festival - Hajj pilgrimage - sacrifice - go to the

mosque - visit family and friends - presents)





museums – schools – civilization – historical

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the

of ancient Egypt by exploring sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past I'm very proud of my heritage.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

Teachers - Archaeologists - Sphinx - carved

When people think about Egypt, they sometimes think of the Pyramids and the ... at Giza. They are famous all over the world. ... think that the ancient Egyptians built the Sphinx to protect the Pyramids. They ... it from one huge piece of stone.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

fertile – heritage – flood – grow

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's • ...... The

Nile used to • ...... every year, making the soil more

This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization.

STEP AHEAD

Yerm 2



### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### Valley – gold – tall – mask

It's over 3,000 years old. It's 54 cm tall. It came from the of the Kings.

#### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### Library - theatre - village - capital

Tourist : Can you tell me some information about Alexandria,

please?

Tour guide: Sure. Alexandria used to be the 6 . . . city of

Egypt.

Tourist: What can I see in it?

Tour guide: You can see the Roman 9. . . . . . , the old town and

Qaitbay Citadel.

Tourist : Can I read books there?

Tour guide: Of course. You can visit the 6 . of Alexandria,

which is famous all over the world.

Tourist : Thanks.

Tour guide: You're welcome.

#### 6 Choose the correct answer: Wocabulary

- A country's heritage comes from its history and its (traditions archeologists historians).
- ② During the (harvesting growing flooding) season, farmers cut and stored their crops.
- 3 Temples and (tourists calendars monuments) are an important part of Egyptian heritage.



#### Umit 9

- People in ancient Egypt (stored developed explored) agriculture and some of the first calendars.
- (5) (Heritage Temple Statue) includes art, buildings, food, music, and dancing from the past.
- Sites at Giza, Luxor, and Abu Simbel are Important Egyptian (geographical - historical - traditional) sites.
- You can learn about how people lived in the past by visiting (museums) - exhibitions - fields).
- 8 The ancient Egyptians were one of the first (historians archeologists civilizations) to develop a system of writing.
- The ancient Egyptians dug canals to carry water from the river to the (Nile - temples - fields).
- 10 During the (flooding harvesting growing) season, farmers planted their crops.
- (i) Every year, the Nile (connected planted flooded) and filled fields with a lot of water.
- (2) After the flood water went away, the soil was (poor fertile stored) and good for farming.
- (3) Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (wood metal clay).
- (14) During the (growing flooding harvesting) season, the fields were full of water.
- (3) They were working on an ancient (painting tool site) when she found a beautiful statue.
- ( Ancient Egyptians sometimes (developed carved dug) statues from a single block of stone.
- 17) I was in an Egyptian tomb when we saw some (engravings photos sites) on the wall.
- (B) The Egyptian museum is full of ancient Egyptian (board games tombs - artifacts).
- (19) Ancient Egyptian farmers used (tools pots masks) for farming the land.
- 20 People made (masks vases counters) from pottery to hold water





### GRAMMAR REVISION

#### 7 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Ancient Egyptians (used use are using) lots of pottery.
- 2 In ancient Egypt, people (wear are wearing wore) sandals and loose clothes.
- Queen Nefertari sometimes (played plays is playing) a board game called senet.
- Archaeologists (finds found find) Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat in Giza.
- 5 The ancient Egyptians (were bury buried bury) their pharaohs in the Valley of the Kings.
- 6 In the past, the Nile River (floods was flood flooded) during the flooding season.
- The ancient Egyptians (make are making made) pots to hold food, water, and oil.
- (8) I (doesn't haven't didn't) play football yesterday.
- (9) What did he (do does did) last weekend?
- (10) She didn't (went going go) to the party last night.
- (ii) (Are Did Does) Hossam help his dad yesterday?
- 12 Did he (buy buys bought) a new bike last Monday?
- (13) I didn't (see saw sees) Miss Mona yesterday.
- (14) Tamer (was were am) walking to school.
- (13) We (was were is) playing in the garden last Fnday.
- ( What (are was were) you doing at two yesterday?
- 17 She (are was were) making her bed.
- (18) I (am were was) eating a chocolate cake last night.
- They (is was were) watching TV an hour ago.
- The archaeologists (dug was digging were digging) when they found an old box.
- 20 I (had was having were having) dinner when dad came back home.
- When the teacher stopped us, we (are writing wrote were writing).

- design We to have museum a new.
- exhibitions different many There are.
- tourists Egypt Lots of year every visit.
- Of Ancient pottery lots used Egyptians.
- made vases clay They from pottery.
- used to of Alexandria Egypt be the capital city.

#### امتحان الكتاب الأساسب تحد تعذيله طبقا للمواطفات الجدتدة Unit (9) Test (3)



lif Listen and choose the correct answer:





(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) أخر الكتاب.

- 1 Luxor is full of different (ships museums traditions monuments) from ancient Egypt
- 2 Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River (flight cruise picnic walk)
- 3 Ancient Egyptians (buried explored designed dug) their kings and queens in the Valley of Kings for thousands of years.
- You can see lots of paintings and (drawings photos engravings tombs) in the temples.
  - 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the bex:

onuments - Archaeologists - civilizations

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. • ..... have found lots of amazing artifacts. Tourists want to see the large @ ................. pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when . . . in other countries were much simpler.

37 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Archaeologists have learned lots of interesting things about the civilization of ancient Egypt by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor, and Giza. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums to learn about the things people did in the past. For example, the ancient Egyptians were one of the first civilizations to develop a system of writing. I'm very proud of my heritage.

#### A Choose the correct answer:

- (1) I'm very interested in Egypt's (traditions seasons foods heritage).
- 2 I visit (museums temples tombs schools) to learn about the things people did in the past.
- (3) I'm very proud of my (heritage archaeologists cities countries).

#### B Answer these questions

- 4 How did archaeologists learn about the civilization of ancient Egypt?
- What did the ancient Egyptians develop? P

#### The Reader (Shipwrecks)

#### 4/A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1) The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal. ()
- You have to be good at surfing to visit a shipwreck.

#### By Choose the correct answer:

- 3 There are storms, reefs, and strong currents in the Red Sea, which can make it (safe - nice - easy - dangerous). Sometimes ships hit the reefs and sink.
- 4 People come from all over the world to go wreck (swimming diving surfing - fishing) in the Red Sea.

#### 5 Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

1 They (decorate - decorates - decorated - was decorated) their house for yesterday's party.

STEP AHEAD

- 2 Mom (was were is are) making special cookies for the feast last night.
- 3 It was a hot day, so they were (drink drank drinks drinking) some cold water.
- 4 The archaeologists (explored are exploring explore were exploring) a site when they found amazing artifacts.
- (5) What did you (eat ate eaten eats) for dinner yesterday?

#### 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1 see can You engravings the temples in.
- (2) famous the world Which over is all library?
- (3) used to of Alexandria Egypt be the capital city.

#### Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

#### 2) Ideas to help you

▶ What is it? a gold mask
▶ How old is it? over 3,000 years old

"Tutankhamun's mask"

- What is it made of? gold ► How big is it? 54 cm tall
- Where is it from? The Valley of the Kings



<u>ब्रीडेंगेर्वी</u> लिट्यी (शिर्माण



IF Listen and choose the correct answer







- (1) (Historians Tourists Archaeologists Teachers) have found lots of artifacts.
- 2 Ancient Egyptians used lots of (pottery walls stones statues).





perfume.

Ancient Egyptian colors).

Read and complete.

امتجان ملحق الكتاب (عامد المتحان ملحق الكتاب) (3) Ancient Egyptians made small (vases - masks - stones - pots) for oil or perfume.

4 Ancient Egyptians made pottery vases from (stones - clay - walls - colors).

#### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

Egypt - archaeologists - stone - languages

The Rosetta 

is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other that people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient 

is a special object that helped people understand two other than the people could read, so they used these to translate the hieroglyphics! This is one of the ways we have learned about life in ancient 

is a special object that helped people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other than the people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other than the people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other than the people understand hieroglyphics. It had the same words in two other than the people understand hieroglyphics.

#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Lots of people visit Egypt every year because of the amazing archaeological sites. Tourists want to see the large monuments, pyramids, and temples. It is incredible to think that ancient Egyptians were building these amazing structures over 4,000 years ago, when civilizations in other countries were much simpler.

#### ∧ Choose the correct answers:

1 It is incredible that ancient Egyptians were building amazing structures over (four - four hundred - four thousand - four million) years ago.

② Civilizations in other countries were much (bigger - older - larger - simpler).

(Tourists - Egyptians - Archaeologists - Inventors) want to see the large monuments.

#### B Answer these questions:

Why do people visit Egypt?

What do tourists want to see in Egypt?



STEP AHEAD



#### The Reader (Shipwrecks)

### AVAY Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- Amir can't check the washing machine
- There was a sea below Amir.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Amir took the (bread shopping washing clothes) out.
- 4 Amir took the laundry up to the (garden Nile roof ground).

#### 5 Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1 Farmers (grow grew grows was growing) different crops in ancient Egypt.
- 2 Did she (watch watches watched watching) TV yesterday?
- 3) They were (ride rode rides riding) their bikes to the park
- 4) We (was walking were walking walked walk) down the street when the accident happened.
- (5) I (don't doesn't haven't didn't) play football yesterday.

#### For the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1) very I'm hentage Egypt's in interested.
- 2 do Egypt What in grow farmers?
- (3) is oldest board Senet game the world's.

### Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element:

#### Agriculture in ancient Egypt

#### P Ideasto help you:

(The Nile - soil - fertile - crops - store - flooding season - growing season - harvesting season)





#### | account - digital - signal - messages |

Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a 0 ....................... form of a letter. We send these electronic 🛛 🔝 . to people using electronic devices. You must have an email 8 . . . . to send these kinds of messages.

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### TV - access - page - smartphones ;

A website is a home 0 on the World Wide Web Websites are usually about one topic. Users can ② .. .. . websites from different electronic devices like 
. . . , tablets, and laptops.

### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### material – reliable – expert – vlogs

When you read blogs watch 

. . . or take information from websites, it's very important to decide how @ the want to choose anything that is very old because the information may be different or even incorrect now.

### 4 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

### presentation - information - blog - texts

.... because it is a personal website A vlog is similar to a 0 where people post . .......... , for others. The difference is that on a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written .

STEP AHEAD

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### public - signed - private - nasty

### 6 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

#### eat - breathe - clean - vacuum

We have smog free towers. These are like giant ① ... cleaners that take polluted air in, ② ... it, and then send it back out for us to ③ ... ... These 7-meter towers can only clean air in a small area like a park.

### Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

#### simple – serious – fuels - factories

Presenter: Welcome to our show, Dr. Hegazy.

Dr Hegazy: Thank you for inviting me.

Presenter: How big is the problem of air pollution in Egypt today?

Dr Hegazy: Well, it is quite 0 ..... , especially in big cities.

Presenter: What causes outdoor air pollution?

Dr Hegazy: It is produced by our cars, . . . . . . . . and power

plants.

Presenter: What else can cause air pollution?

#### Unit 10

#### he Choose the correct answer: Avocabulary

- 1 If you like posting videos, you should start a/an (email blog vlog).
- 2 You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should try to (make a video touch type make a podcast).
- 3 Magdy has to give a (presentation website device) about technology,
- Tamer is using different (emails websites signals) to help him with his science project.
- (5) You can only send a/an (signal vlog email) if you have an account.
- 6 Youssef's dad helped him (sign in set up look for) a new account.
- Gameela posts the things she writes about sports on her (presentation - blog - vlog).
- 8 My smartphone is an electronic (vlog blog device)
- You can only send an email if you have a/an (website account vlog).
- 10 Nahla has a new (social media presentation device) account.
- (ii) Nahla's account is (private free perfect) so only her friends and family can see it.
- Mona's friends like her photos and they always write nice (vlogs signals comments) about them.
- 3 She (posted typed wrote) her first video on her account yesterday.
- 14 You should sit up (street straight striped) with your feet on the floor.
- (15) You shouldn't work too long without a (meal money break).
- (ii) He took his pencil, notebook, and eraser out of his (bed backpack seat).
- Adam's mom is a writer at the local (book newspaper library).
- (B) You can ask the school to (publish touch type write) your story in the school newspaper or online.
- (19) He (signs into signs up sets up) his account every day.
- You can (sign up set up sign in) for a new account.



# रिटरकी 2

### GRAMMAR REVISION ...

#### 2/ Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Everyone (can't should shouldn't) recycle their plastic bottles.
- 2 People (must shouldn't should) drop garbage.
- We (should shouldn't mustn't) plant more trees. Then the streets would be cooler.
- 4 People (should must shouldn't) cut down trees.
- S You (can't should shouldn't) use a capital letter at the beginning of each sentence.
- 6 You (should shouldn't can't) choose a title for your story.
- You (shouldn't must should) use handwriting if you want the school to publish your story in the newspaper.
- 8 You (should shouldn't can't) ask a friend to read your story before you publish it.
- You (should shouldn't must) hide your writing. Share it with your friends!
- (10) He shouldn't (go goes going) to bed late.
- (1) Marwa should (eating eats eat) all her sandwiches.
- 1 don't have any free time today, (or and but) I am free this weekend.
- (3) She doesn't like reading (but or and) writing.
- (14) I like poetry (and but or) fiction.
- Do you do the recycling (on in at) the morning?
- Do you like to eat fruit (but or and) vegetables?
- (الدرل) are working together, (or and but) there are still a lot of environmental problems.
- (8) We study environmental science (at on in) the afternoon.

#### 3/Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 message a private message instant An is.
- 2) is page A website the internet on a home.





#### امتحان الكتأن الأساسي بعد تعديله طبقا للمواضفات الجديدة Unit (10) Tast (4)

#### Listen and choose the correct answer:





(4Ms)

#### نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) آخر الكتاب،

- (1) We send emails using electronic (radios TVs devices machines)
- (2) An instand message is a (public general private secret) message
- 3 The (email presentation letter Instant message) is a message that you can send on a social media platform.
- (internet phone account laptop) to send an email.

#### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the hors (3Ms)

#### publish - checklist - touch type - story

: Hr, Mom Do you want to read my new 🕕 Adam

Mom

: Of course I do honey

Adam

: Here you are

Mom

: This is an incredible story Adam. You should let more people

read it

Adam

: How do I do that, Mont?

Mom

: First you should @

it Just remember

to sit up straight and keep your feet on the floor. And take a break every 10 or 15 minutes. Then, you can ask the school to

it in the school newspaper

Adam

:OK. Mom.

3. Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person who posts information there regularly for others to read. There are blogs about many different topics like sports or cooking.

A vlog is similar to a blog because it is a personal website where people post information for others. The difference is that on a viog, people post videos they make instead of written texts



3 Youssel's - does - him - How - help - mom? 4

# Write an email of (40) words to your friend Ramy:

(6Ms)

Tell him your opinion about using social media. Do you use social media or not? What do you use social media for? Do you think social media is good or bad? Why? Your email address is hany@school.net. Your friend's email address is ramy@hotmail.com.

From.

To:

Subject:

<u>बिह्मिती</u> പ്പിക്കി

# Unit 10 Test 4



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (83) آخر الكتاب.

- 1 Amira thinks that the school should create a club for (cooking games writers - science).
- 2) Amira is in grade (three four five six).
- 3 Amira likes to write (articles books newspapers stories).
- 4 Amira doesn't have time to write in the (morning afternoon evening - night).

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

; You're thirteen now, aren't you?

Youssef: Yeah. Why?

Wael

: That means you can O ... Wael

account like me.

for a social media

(4Ms)

# امتحان ملحق الكتاب (10 📶 📶

Wael

Youssef: What do you use your @

for? : I post videos, i also made some 6

Youssef: Who are these cyberfriends? Do you really know them?

: No, but I can watch their videos. Some of them are so cool! Wae

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

online.

People have different hobbies. Sports, computers, the internet, drawing, reading and collecting stamps are very famous hobbies, but television is the most common hobby. People watch television or listen to the radio or the television to know what is happening all over the world. They know about accidents, sports and important things. They also listen to or watch interesting programmes. Many of them like football matches, others like science programmes.

## A>Choose the correct answer

- Most people like (collecting stamps cooking reading watching TV).
- People like (one four five different) hobbies.
- 3 People watch (the radio the internet TV newspaper) to know what is happening all over the world.

#### B>Answer these questions

- What hobbies are mentioned in the passage? J
- (5) Why do people listen to the news?

# The Reader (Amir takes action)

## Read and write T (True) or F (Faise);

(4Ms)

- Amir took the laundry up to the roof.
- (2) Amir helped his Grandma cook dinner.

#### By Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Amir felt (happy sad tired hungry) when he saw the poor bird.
- (4) The wash is (started finished gone begun),





#### 5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We (should shouldn't can't mustn't) have more recycling bins in our streets.
- (2) I can't write short stories (and or but so) articles.
- 3 You (must should shouldn't can) be afraid to ask your teacher for help.
- 4 She does her homework (on in at for) the evening.
- S He shouldn't (come comes coming came) to bed late.

# Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

- 1 club idea after school is a perfect An.
- 2 problems cause pollution What air does? 4
- 3 devices electronic use We send messages to. В

# Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

## The computer

# Ideas to help you

Ф

( computer - important - invention - study - play - games - internet - chat - friends - information )



cruise - trip - traffic - lights

jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move.

The to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic

are often red and that makes the traffic even worse.

2/Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

recycle - spaces - trees - cars

It's important to have green • in a city. People are happier when they have green spaces. To do this, we need more parks and • in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can • water.

3/Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

easier – streetcars – gasoline – more difficult

The first car that ran on 
appeared in the 1800s. People bought cars to make their lives 
Boston had some of the first 
and subway systems.

4/Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

purns – cleans – environment – electric

प्रिटमका 2

STEP AHEAD

# 5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

# ancient – papyrus – fishing – skiff

Boats and ships were the most important form of transportation in ancient

Egypt. Most Egyptians used a small boat called a •

They made this simple boat from @

and rope.

People could travel short distances in these boats, or they could use it

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

driverless – vehicles – electric – palm trees,

In my ideal city, all transportation is more ecological. There are

cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they O

are 😉 .

electric 0

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

wet - dry - bikes - advantage

Host

: Hi, Astrid. Where are you from?

**Astrid** 

: I'm from Netherlands.

Host

Astrid

: How do children go to school in your country?

to school. : They ride their O .

: What is the 
... . . . of going to school by bike?

Host

: You can exercise on the way to school.

Astrid

: What is the disadvantage of going to school by bike?

Host

: It's very rainy here and you can get

**Astrid** 



② Farmers used to transport their goods in (wagons - cabs - streetcars)

and carts.

3 Ships with steam engines could travel faster than sail (subways boats - trains).

4 Today (ferries - carts - airplanes) can fly to different continents in one day.

5 The (roof - wall - floor) is the top part of a building.

6 The (sea - canal - ocean) is a long area of water, made for boats to travel on.

(Ice - Snow - Water vapor) is water in the form of gas.

8 The (waterway - highway - railway) is the different routes people use for traveling by water like a river, canal, or lake.

(9) In my ideal city, there are a lot of (bike paths - green spaces - traffic jams) where people can go for walks.

10 There are (trees - buildings - traffic) in all the streets to provide shade and make the buildings cooler.

(1) All the buildings have (wind turbines - water turbines - solar panels) on their roofs to get energy from the sun.

12 There are recycling (factories - bins - companies) in the parks and streets, so people can recycle their plastic bottles.

(13) There are lots of (bike paths - traffic jams - waterways), so that people can ride their bikes.

(14) The (destinations - cabs - residents) travel around the city on electric buses and streetcars.

(15) There are few (signs - traffic lights - traffic jams) in my city, so you can drive your car easily.

(16) All the (transportation - signs - lights) in my city is electric, so the air is cleaner and there's less noise.

17 The (streetcar - cart - wagon) travels around a town or city. It can carry about 40 people. It doesn't use gasoline. It's electric.

(18) The (train - subway - ferry) takes people or goods across rivers, lakes, or the sea. It can be quite small or very big.

- The (bus subway train) travels underground. People use it to travel around cities. It's fast and it isn't expensive.
- The (cab airplanes bus) transports people on roads around cities or towns. Only three or four people can travel in this. It can be expensive

# GRAMMAR REVISION D

## Choose the correct answer:

- 1 They travel to Saudi Arabia (In on by) ship.
- 2 Dad often goes to work (on in at) time.
- 3 He crossed the river (by in on) boat.
- 4 We go to the park (on by in) foot
- 5 She goes to Alexandria (in on by) train
- 6 I pass lots of shops (on at in) my way to school
- (7) I get (at to for) school at eight o'clock.
- (In On At) my opinion, we should help our environment by all means
- Maged is taller (then than the) Hani.
- (10) Grandpa is the (old older oldest) in the family
- (11) Horses are (faster fastest fast) than zebras.
- This lesson is (difficult less difficult the most difficult) than the last lesson.
- (3) Our school is (good better than the best) one in my town.
- Luxor is (famous more famous the most famous) historical city in Egypt
- 15 Fady's math mark is (bad worse the worst) than the science mark
- The red dress is (more the most the least) expensive than the blue dress.
- 37 Smartphones are (good better than the best) electronic devices.
- 18 Rats are (smaller smaller than the smallest) than rabbits.
- 19 This is the (bad worse worst) story I've ever read.
- 20 I think judo is (less more the least) interesting sport.

# 10. Order the words to make correct sentences:

- 1) have nowadays problem Many cities big a.
- 2 a traffic We jam have to sit in.





			7
40.	mo RA	48.46	
w	1 1121		
_			

- 3 lights often traffic The red are.
- 4 can't on make I the trip → foot.
- 5 transportation public good We have.
- 6 there of Are traffic a lot lights?
- belt seat your wear must You.
- 8 go Did museum to you the science?
- important green It's spaces have to.
- need trees and more We parks.
- can What do residents help to?
- volunteer garbage People up pick to.
- transportation changed engine of the steam The invention.
- River My city the Nile on is located.
- are the houses There around trees palm.
- energy better than fuels Solar fossil is.
- new The ferry canals the use can.
- transportation ecological This more now is.
- vehicles Hydrogen produce don't gases dangerous.

امتحان الكتاب الأساسي بعد تعديله طبقا للمواصفات الجديدة Unit (11) Test (5)



## Listen and choose the correct answer:





(4Ms)

لص الاستماع موجود صفحة (84) آخر الكتاب،

- (1) We have to sit in a traffic (light jam rule road) on my way to school.
- 2 The (bus car transportation trip) to school sometimes takes us an hour.
- 3 The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even (better best - worse - worst).
- 4 | can't make the trip (on foot by bus by ship by train) because my school is too far to walk to.

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box: (3Ms)

spaces - environment - paths - volunteer

- : Hey, Talia Did you go to the science museum with your class Dina
- yesterday? : Yes, we did. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner urban Talia
- : Oh, really? What did you learn? Dina
- : Well, it's important to have green @ Talia
- : That sounds like a good idea to me. We need fewer cars too, Dina
- don't we? for people to ride ; Yes, and we need bike 6 Talla their bikes on.

# 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

In my city, all transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. From what I know, hydrogen vehicles don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. You can ride your bike all around the city on the bike paths.





# امتحان الْكتاب الأساسي ﴿ 11 كَالْكَالُ A>Choose the correct answer: 1 In my city, all transportation is now more (dangerous - steam - harmful ecological). 2 Electric cabs don't have any (engines - drivers - wheels - motors). (3) I am sure that the air will be (cleaner - dirtier - darker - worse) if we use electric vehicles. B>Answer three questions What does hydrogen gas vehicles produce? (5) Where can we ride our bikes? The Reader (Amir takes action) 4 Read and write T (True) or F (False): Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags. (3) Amir and his grandmother hanged up the (clothes - cloth - seaguli - roof). 4 Amir's tablet was on the (ground - table - roof - desk). (1) Sharks are (large - larger than - larger - the largest) than turtles. 2) Do you think English is (more - most - the least - the most) interesting (3) Nora is always laughing. She's the (happy - happier - the happiest -

1) transportation - What animals - people - for - use - do?

2 people - The ferry - carry - of - can - a lot.

(4Ms)

(5Ms)

(3Ms)

Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

How you and your family go to school and work!



विविधित लिस्की (भिर्मिक)

# Unit Test









نص الاستماع موحود صفحة (84) آحر الكتاب.

1 There is a great new (canoe - boat - ferry - ship) system that moves people up and down the river.

2 The new (gasoline - harmful - ecological - polluted) boats use both wind

power and electric energy.

(3) The (residents - sailors - drivers - engineers) can use the ferry system to get around the town.

4) It is very important to protect our (roads - stations - streets - waterways).

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

Cities like London and Boston had some of the first O and subway systems. Soon, high-speed trains made traveling between rural and urban areas very fast. From the beginning of time, humans watched birds and wanted to fly. Today, we fly from one to another in no more than one day. We are even

able to send people to the Moon in 4





#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

A long time ago, the only types of transportation for humans were walking, running, and swimming. After that, humans began to use animals like mules, donkeys, and horses. Then came small boats like cances and other types of water transportation. Once they invented the wheel, people started to use small wagons and carts. Farmers in the country could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

#### A>Choose the correct answers:

- ① Humans began to use animals like (cows dogs buffalos mules) for transportation.
- Canoes are types of (rail air water road) transportation.
- (Farmers Inventors Drivers Riders) could transport their goods to markets in cities more easily.

#### B>Answer these questions

- What were the only types of transportation for humans a long time ago?

  """

  """

  """
- 5 What did people use after they invented the wheel?

# The Reader (Amir takes action)

## 4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1 Amir could see plastic bottles floating down the river.
- 2 All of nature is terrible.

#### By Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Trucks transported (metal wood plastic glass) bottles.
- 4 The seagull was in (trouble the tree Nile ground).

Term 2

STEP AHEAD

Connect



#### Thoose the correct answer:

- 1 The blue whale is (big bigger the biggest bigger than) animal in the world.
- 2 Mom goes to work (in by on at) car.
- 3 Aya is (clever cleverer cleverest the cleverest) girl in the class
- 4 Football is (more most the least the most) exciting than handball
- Today's match is (bad worse worst the best) than yesterday's match

## Fut the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

school – on – go to – Do – foot – you?

Ъ

2 to - important - waterways - our - it's - protect.

3 types - of - Which - transport - use - do you?

?

Write an email of (40) words to your friend Kamal:

(6Ms)

Tell him your opinion about the land transportation now. Do electric cars have drivers or not? What will happen if we use electric vehicles? What do hydrogen vehicles produce? Are hydrogen vehicles dangerous or safe? Your email address is kareem@school.com. Your friend's email address is kamal@school.com

From.

To:

Subject:

STEP AHEAD

# Revision on Unit 12

## 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

agriculture - change - erosion - industry

Humans can cause erosion. Heavy 
is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate 
. Climate change causes sea levels to rise and this results in more 
.

# 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

dry - wet - water - shortage

# 3 Read and complete the text: with the words from the box:

flood - shortage - reuse - showers

Hi, I'm Mona. There's a water 

we'll have to find ways to save water. My dad will stop washing his car. My mom will 

water from the kitchen for the garden. That will help the plants. I'll have shorter 

That will save a lot of water.

Term 7



cook - appetizer - order - course

Waiter: Welcome to our restaurant, sir.

Guest: Thank you.

Walter: Are you ready to 0

Guest: Yes.

Waiter: What @ .. .. .. ... do you want?

Guest: Green salad, please.

Waiter: What about the main 6

Guest: Chicken and pasta, please.

# Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

rocks - natural - flows - drought

Hoda: Hi, Hany. Do you know what erosion is?

Hany: Sure. It's a 0 . . process.

Hoda: When does it happen?

and soil is moved from one Hany: it happens when 8

place to another.

Hoda: What can move rocks and soil?

Hany: Water, wind, or 0.

# 6 Choose the correct answer: Wocabulary

- (1) When heavy rains or strong winds move soil and rocks from one place to another, it creates (drought - volcano - erosion).
- 2 During a (drought flood landslide), there isn't enough rain, and rivers and takes become dry.
- 3 A (glacier lake river) is a huge ice flow that moves very slowly across the land.



- 4 The (agriculture pollution atmosphere) is made of oxygen, carbon dioxide, and other gases.
- 5 Too much rain in one area can cause a (water shortage drought flood).
- 6 When the soil and rocks move and fall away, this is (landslide tsunami glacier).
- There's a (flood water shortage heavy rain) when people don't have enough water.
- 8 When a volcano explodes under the sea, this creates a huge wave called a (tsunami - flood - erosion).
- Solar and wind energies are (polluted dangerous ecofriendly) energies.
- World leaders had a very important meeting and signed an important (notebook - story - agreement)

# GRAMMAR REVISION

#### Choose the correct answer?

- (1) She (helps will help helped) clean the house tomorrow
- 2 Ayman (will go goes won't go) to the beach next weekend. He'll stay at home.
- (3) He will (come comes coming) with us to the party.
- Malak won't (visits visiting visit) us tomorrow.
- (s) (Is Will Does) Tarek buy an electric car? No, he won't.
- 6 If there's a water shortage, people (finds found will find) ways to save water.
- (7) Mom's plants won't die if she (will reuse reuses reuse) water from the kitchen.
- (8) If Mona (has have will have) shorter showers, she'll save a lot of water.
- 9 If dad stops washing his car, he (will waste wastes won't waste) water.
- It (helps will help won't help) the environment if we stop using plastic.
- if it (rains won't rain doesn't rain) soon, we will have a water shortage.
- Polar bears (will lose lose won't lose) their habitat if the polar ice caps continue to melt.
- (13) If there (is was will be) a drought, plants and crops will die.

STEP AHEAD

- [4] I wrote a good report for my school magazine, (and but so) they published itt
- نادة) The world's leaders (قادة) are talking, (but so and) they haven't signed (معاهدة) a treaty (معاهدة) yet.
- (6) I can make ful medames (or but so) koshari for dinner tonight.
- 17 There hasn't been rain in our village for months, (so but and) now there is a water shortage (نقص).
- (ممص ) are all (ممص) are all (الشوفان), falafel, (or and but plant-based foods.
- 19 Judy loves cooking, (but or so) she helps her mother in the kitchen.
- 20 Adam does not like helping in the kitchen, (and so but) he always washes the dishes.

#### 8) Order the words to make correct sentences:

- (1) cause can erode Winds to the land.
- (2) process Erosion natural a is.
  - P
- (3) you afternoon Will go this shopping?
- 4) planet our affects change Climate.
- 5 leaders World important had an meeting.
- 6 agreed to start Countries gases reducing greenhouse.
- 7 decided coal using to They stop.
- 8 must We all change climate slow.
  - P

## المتحان الكتاب الأساسي بحد لقديلة طيفًا الفواصفات الجديدة ، 12) Test (6)



#### Listen and choose the correct answer:





(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (84) آخر الكتاب.

- 1 We need to try to (continue save slow keep) climate change.
- 2 Nations are now making (planes plans plates place) to work on this problem.
- We can (recycle cause make pick up) paper, plastic, and glass at home.
- 4 Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change (Festival Party Celebration Conference)
  - 2. Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

conference - greenhouse gases - global - Agreement

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting.

196 parties signed the Paris 

. The parties agreed to reduce 

warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing 

immediately. This was the first time that so many nations made a serious effort to slow global warming.

#### 3. Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Erosion is a natural process. It happens when rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. The waves and currents in the sea can erode beaches, and rivers can erode riverbanks. Heavy rains or winds can also cause the land to erode. Different types of flows - floods, landslides, tsunamis, or glaciers - also erode the land. Humans can cause erosion too. Heavy agriculture is one way that people do this. Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in climate change. Climate change causes sea levels to use and this results in more erosion.



# A Choose the correct answers

- 1) The waves and currents in the sea can (pollute burn reduce erode) beaches.
- 2 Burning fossil fuels is another way because it results in (flood climate change - drought - deforestation).
- 3 Erosion is a natural (process experiment experience test).

## B>Answerthese questions:

- (4) When does erosion happen?
- (5) How can humans cause erosion?



### The Reader (Amir takes action)

## Read and write Ti(True) or Fi(False):

(4Ms)

- Amir's grandma volunteered to help.
- 2 Amir and his friends couldn't make a change.

## Bit Choose the correct answer:

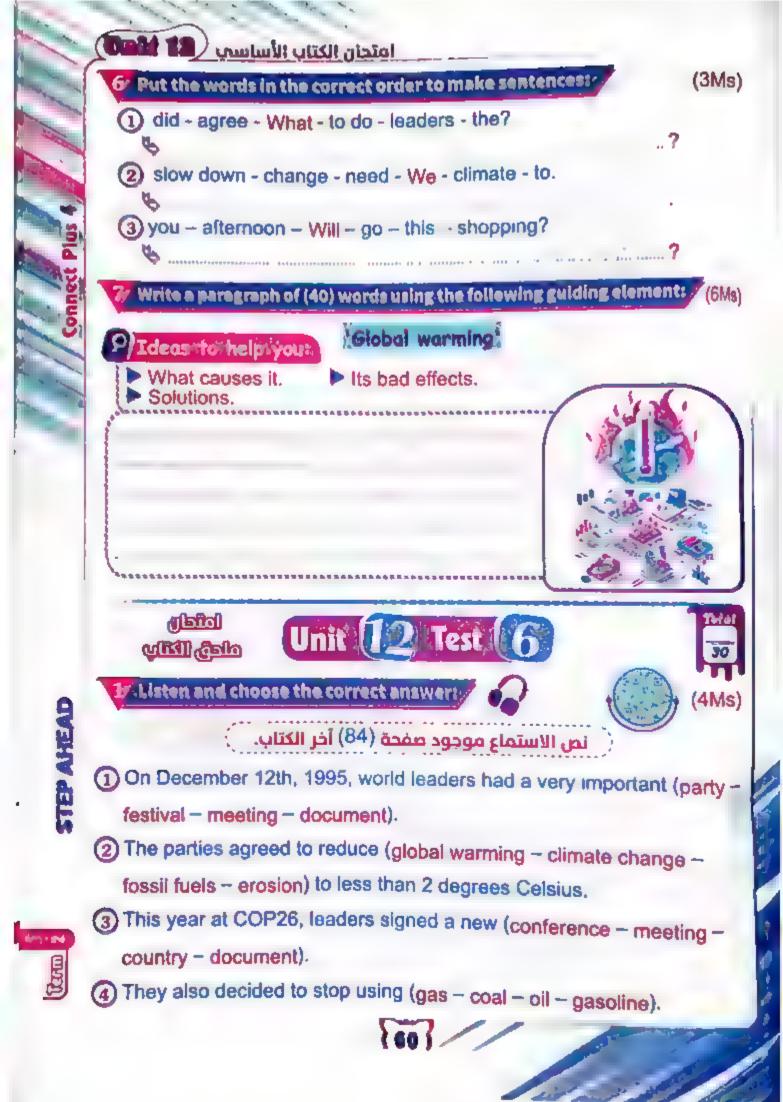
- 3 Amir wanted to take (acting action photo message).
- 4 Amir saw the seagull in her (nest bed leg head).

# 5 Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1 He has enough money, (so but and or) he can buy the mobile he wants.
- 2) If we drive electric cars, we (reduce reduces won't reduce will reduce) pollution.
- 3 He won't (go goes will go going) to the cinema next weekend, he has to study for his exam.
- 4 She will get a prize if she (writes will write doesn't write write) a good newspaper report.
- 5 Sara does not like helping in the kitchen, (and so but or) she always tidies her room.





## 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

Car An important topic at the meeting was • companies agreed to stop making vehicles that use fossil fuels by vehicles. We must 2040 so they will make more 9 are all slow climate change. Treaties like the Paris @ one way for nations to work together to do this.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

The seasons of the year are fall, winter, spring and summer. Fall isn't too hot and it isn't too cold. It's a nice season. Winter in our country is cold. But we always have the sun. The flowers are beautiful in spring. But spring is often windy and dusty. In summer, it is hot. Many people go on holidays. On holidays, people don't go to work. They rest and have fun. Some go to the farms; some go to the beach and some stay at home

# A Choose the correct mewer

- 1 There are (two three four five) seasons in a year.
- ② Spring is often (windy cold hot snowy).
- (Winter Spring Summer Fall) in our country is cold.

# B Answer these questions

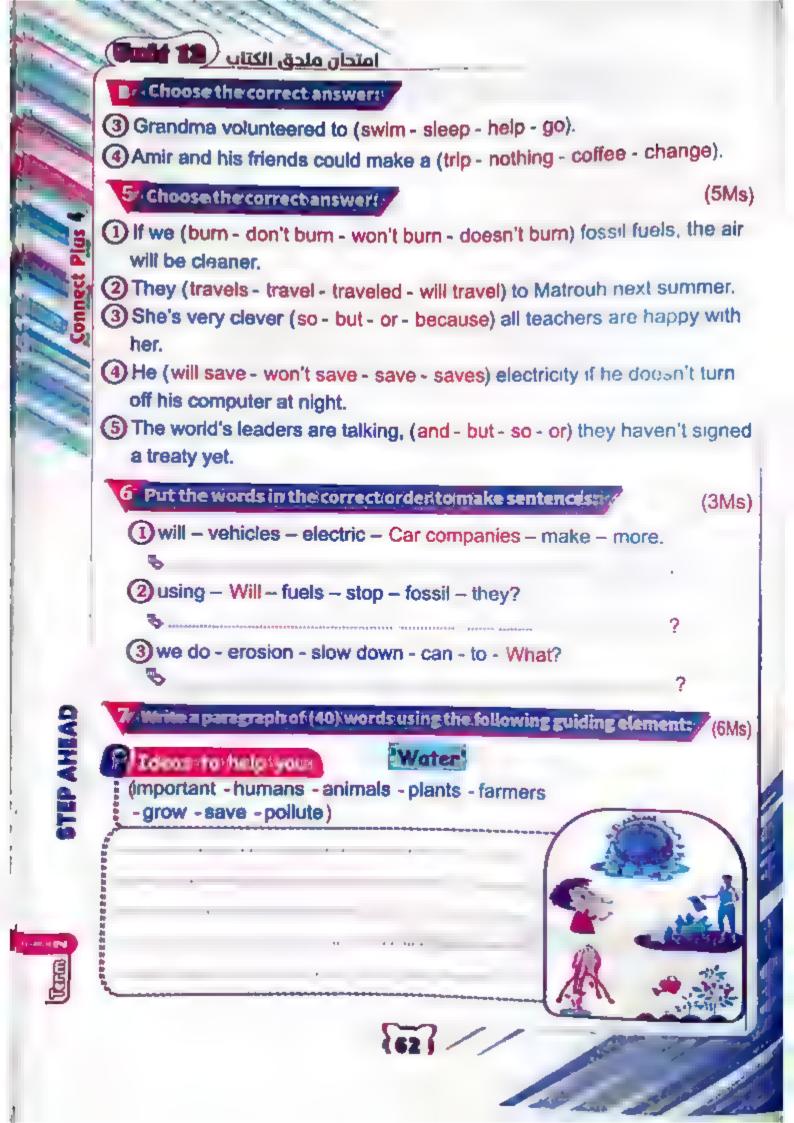
- What's the weather like in fall?
- What do people usually do on holidays?

# The Reader (Amir takes action)

# Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1) The water is important for all of us.
- 2 One baby seagull put its head out of the nest.



Port 2

The state of the s







If Listen and choose the correct answer:

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) آخر الكتاب.



2 All the electricity in my city comes from a (solar - wind - water - fossil) energy.

3 The new homes have solar panels on their (walls - roofs - doors - gardens).

4 There are (orange trees - apple trees - lemon trees - palm trees) around the houses.

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

dry - Drought - water shortage - danger

happens where there is not enough rain for a long time. When this happens, rivers and lakes become dry Farmers cannot grow food and nature is in . When people do not have all the water that they need, we say that there is a 6...

#### Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Every morning, Hamdy goes to work by train. As he has a long journey, he always buys a newspaper which helps him to make the time pass more quickly. On Monday morning, he looked at the sports page. He wanted to read a report on an important football match. The report was so interesting that he forgot to get off at his station. He got off at the next station and had to wait a long time for a train going back. Of course he arrived very late. His boss was very angry when he knew the story and told him that work is more important than football.

#### ∧ Choose the correct answer to a constant of the correct answer to a correct and a correct answer to a correct and a correct answer to a c

Hamdy is interested in (reports - work - football - drawing).

2 Hamdy was carried (one station - two stations - three stations - four stations) by mistake.





STEP AHEAD



3 Hamdy reads a (book - newspaper - magazine - story) on his journey to work.

# B. Answer these questions:

- 4 How does Hamdy go to work?
- (5) When did this story happen?

## The Reader (Amir takes action)

## Read and write T-(True) or F (False):

- 1 Trucks transported plastic bottles of water in plastic bags.
- Amir and his friends could make a change.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- (3) Amir does his homework in the (afternoon morning evening night).
- (4) Using too much plastic is (harming helping improving developing) the birds.

#### Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1) Today, we're (talk talks talked talking) about pollution.
- 2) The sun (is coming come comes was coming) up in the moming.
- 3 The archaeologists (are digging dig dug were digging) when they found an old box.
- 4 Going to school on foot is (healthy -healthier -healthier than -healthiest) than going by bus.
- 5 I don't have any free time today, (so or and but) I am free on the weekend.

# 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

- with faster Ships engines steam could travel.
- 2 on you school time Do get to?
- 3 can websites access How people?



Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element:



(last week - museum - history - artifacts statues - tools - tourists - photos)



# Revision Test (2





Listen and choose the correct answer:

ىص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) أحر الكتاب.

- In the past, people used smoke (signs signals notes fires) to send messages.
- We send (electronic electric fire bird) messages today.
- (3) A/An (blog vlog presentation email) is a digital form of a letter.
- (4) You must have an email (website form keyboard account) to send emails.

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

The problem with transportation that uses 0

is that it burns

fossil fuels, and these are bad for the \varTheta

. So today, people

are developing cleaner forms of 6

like electric cars. There

are even electric buses that use some solar energy from solar panels on

their roofs. Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships, too.





# 3 Read the following text and answerthe questions belows

(5Ms)

Man is dreaming of traveling through time. He wishes to travel into the past to know what happened long ago. Also, he wishes to travel into the future to find out about what will happen. People think that inventing something like a time machine may help them to do so. But until now, man can't do that except in his dreams. While we are asleep, we can travel into the past or the future. But dreams are not usually true. They may be happy or frightening.

# A Choose the correct answers

- 1 A (rocket plane spaceship time machine) may help people to travel through time.
- The only available means of traveling through time now is (planes the time machine - dreams - ships).
- 3 While we are (sailing flying asleep driving), we can travel into the past or the future.

#### B Answer these questions:

- Why does man wish to travel through time?
- (5) What may our dreams be like?

## The Reader (Amir takes action)

# Read and write Th (True) or E (False):

- Grandma doesn't like seaguils and thinks they are ugly.

2 Amir didn't want to take action.

# Choose the correct answers

- 3 The seaguil had (two three four five) babies.
- 4 Amir took (notes roofs rooms clothes) on his tablet.

# Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1 I can make this meal (easily easy quick careful).
- 2 What does he (ate eat eats eating) for lunch?
- 3 He will have a party if he (will win win wins doesn't win) the first prize.



- ③ People in ancient Egypt built many amazing (hotels museums rivers temples).
- 4 The ancient Egyptians developed some of the first (clocks calendars watches machines).

Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

interested - reports - club - projects

As a fourth-grade student, I like to write stories and about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun. I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school. Some of my friends are also in writing after school. So, that's why I think that an after-school is a perfect idea.

#### 3 Read the following text and answer the questions before:

(5Ms)

The teacher's job at school is a very difficult one. It may be harder than any other job. The teacher should help every student in the class to get the most of what is explained. My uncle Magdy is a computer teacher. He helps his students to use the different programs of computer. He also helps them how to surf the internet. He explains lessons to his students in a simple way. All of them love him very much

#### A Choose the correct answers:

- 1) The teacher should be (impatient helpful lazy careless)
- 2 Any other job is (easier harder better shorter) than the teacher's job
- (3) My uncle Magdy is a (math -computer -science -PE) teacher

#### B :Answer these questions:

- 4 What is a teacher's job like? \$
- (5) What does Mr. Magdy help his students to do? \$

#### The Reader (Shipwredes)

# 4 A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- Thônis Heracleion was a very old city.
- 2 A volcano destroyed the temple of Amun.



# Revision Test (4



Listen and choose the correct answer:



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (85) آخر الكتاب،

- The Pyramids are in (Cairo Giza Luxor Aswan).
- ② Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian (schools students teachers traditions).
- (3) Egyptian people are famous for welcoming (visitors temples hosts countries).
- (4) You can eat delicious (sights people drinks food) in Egypt.

#### Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nife every year, making the soil more fertile. This used to 2 is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. There were three o of farming in ancient Egypt, which were all connected to the Nile.

# Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

One day, the rabbit asked the tortoise to have a race to the river. The tortoise knows well that it's very slow, but it said, "All right". So the rabbit began to run very fast. The tortoise crawled along behind him very slowly. On the way, the rabbit thought, "Ha, ha. I'll win very easily. I'll just stop for a little rest". So the rabbit stopped and went to sleep. But the tortoise didn't stop and it slowly passed the sleeping rabbit. So the tortoise arrived at the river first and won the race.

# Choose the correct answers.

- 1) A tortoise is (faster than slower than as slow as as not slow as) a rabbit.
- This story teaches us not to be (proud active fast clever).



3 The rabbit stopped for a little (drink - lunch - rest - dinner).

The Reader (Amir takes action)

(4Ms)

Revision feeds

B Answerthese questions

What did the rabbit ask the tortolse to do?

(5) Why did the tortolse win the race at last?

People are using too much plastic.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

## Write an email of (40) words to your friend Amal:

(6Ms)

Tell her about your favorite meal for lunch. What do you need to buy to make the recipe? How can you cook it? Is it delicious or not? Your name is Nada and your email address is nada@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is amal@school.net.

From:

To.

Subject





1/Listen and choose the correct answer:





(4Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (86) أخر الكتاب.

- (1) Trees, plants and flowers grow when there's a lot of (rain -wind storm sun).
- 2 The temperature is (hot -cold -windy -snowy) in the rainforest environment.
- Sometimes there are beaches with sand in the (rainforest -polar coastal -rural) environment.
- Sometimes there are (seas -fields -deserts -swamps) in the coastal environment.





Egypt an meal is served with people sitting together around a table A typical 9 has rice, a kind of vegetable stew soup, stuffed vegetables and meat or chicken. Egyptians are very \varTheta 👚 and are very happy when you ask for more food.

This means you enjoyed their delicious meal!

# 3 Feed the following test and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Coffee is the most favorite drink in many countries today. Farmers grow coffee in different parts of the world. Coffee grew first in Ethiopia. People discovered it there more than 1000 years ago. After that, Arab travelers took the coffee plant to Egypt and other Arab countries Then the people in Turkey learnt about coffee. The first coffee shop in London was opened in 1652.

## Choose the correct answer

- 1) The underlined word it refers to (Ethiopia coffee the world tea).
- People discovered coffee more than one (hundred thousand million billion) years ago.
- 3 Coffee is the most favorite (food crop plant drink) in many countries today.

#### BAnswer these questions:

- Where did coffee grow first?
- (5) Who took coffee to Egypt? 🦠

#### The Reader (Amir takes action

#### and and write T (True) or F (False):

(1) Amir's grandma volunteered to help.



Connect

We can't use biodegradable bags.

## Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Amir took the laundry up to the (garden Nile roof ground).
- (4) Amir wanted to take (money action photo message).

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

(5Ms)

- 1 Heba should (eating eats ate eat) all her sandwiches.
- 2 The leaders had a conference, (but or and so) they couldn't agree on anything.
- (3) Football is (more less than the most the least) popular than handball.
- (4) Mom (is cleaning cleaned cleans was cleaning) the house when dad came home.
- (5) If he (has have had will have) shorter showers, he'll save a lot of water.

#### 🎁 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

(3Ms)

1) from - fuels - What - made - fossil - are?

₩

(2) takes - hour - an - school - to - The trip.

**6** ....

3 must – We – all – change – climate – slow.

Write a paragraph of (40) words using the following guiding element: (6Ms)

# Ideas to helptyou: A trip to the zoo

(trip - zoo - family - car - animals - birds photos - lunch - happy)









## Listen and choose the correct answer:





- 1 In my city, all transportation is now more (dangerous steam careless - ecological).
- ② Electric cars don't have any (engines drivers wheels seats).
- 3 Air will be cleaner if we use (coal electric gasoline oil) vahicles.
- We also have buses that use power from (oxygen carbon dioxide hydrogen - nitrogen) gas.

# Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(3Ms)

We help to protect our environment. There are kinds of energy we can use which are 0 They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural 9 ... such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make and, on the long run, they are better.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Soha and Omar have traveled to different places in Egypt. They have been to Al-Fayoum where they visited Wadi El-Rayyan and a famous temple. They have also been to the Red Sea at Hurghada. There, they enjoyed the beach, the camel rides and the boat trips. Soha and Omar haven't been to the North Coast yet. They hope they will go there next summer. They will go there by bus.

#### A Choose the correct answer:

- (1) Soha and Omar hope to visit (the North Coast Hurghada -Wadi El-Rayyan - Sharm El-Sheikh).
- ② Soha and Omar will go to the North Coast by (car bus train plane).
- (3) Soha and Omar have traveled to different places in (France England Egypt - America).

STEP AHEAD



- Which places did Soha and Omar visit?
- What did they enjoy during their visit to Hurghada?

# The Reader (Shipwrecks)

# 4/AF Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1 The Red Sea allows ships to travel to Europe through the Suez Canal.
- The ship is the biggest and most exciting thing that the divers found. (

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Thônis Heracleion was the largest (station port mall market).
- People come from all over the world to go wreck (swimming diving surfing - fishing) in the Red Sea.

# 5 Choose the correct answers

(5Ms)

- 1) What are you (do doing does did), Tamer?
- 2 He doesn't (use uses is using used) buses. He has a car.
- 3 Faten was (visit visits visited visiting) the museum yesterday.
- (4) He goes to school (on by at in) foot.
- 5 The green bike dress is (more most the most the least) expensive than the black bike.

# 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentencess

(3Ms)

- 1) in beaches erode The waves the sea can.
- 4
- 2 ! a account Can social media get?
  - Andre I trained any any annual hobby and be followed population of the contract of the contr
- 3 there of Are traffic a lot lights?







Mary Control of the last of th	-0	-
Table 1977	AL LEWIS CO.	Tine-te-
THE REAL PROPERTY.	100	Teeds

# Write an email of (40) words to your friend Mariam:

(6Ms)

Tell her about the book you read about energy. Explain the difference between the renewable and non-renewable energies. Tell her about your favorite energy and what can you use it for. Your email address is esraa@school.net. Your friend's email address is mariam@gmail.com.

From:

To.

Subject.





Total 30

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (86) آخر الكتاب.

- 1 On a vlog, people post (photos videos paintings texts).
- ②A blog belongs to (family family a team one person).

Meister and choose the correct answers

- 3 A vlog is a personal (website message email World Wide Web).
- 4 On a blog, people post (videos podcasts written texts clips).

2/Read and complete the text with the words from the box;

(3Ms)

environment - mountainous - survive - weather

The environment is a type of environments. It can be difficult for people to live and travel in this high environment. They are very beautiful places, but they can be cold, with lots of rain or snow, and the can change quickly. The animals and plants that live here have to find special ways to





# 3/ Read the following text and answer the questions below:

(5Ms)

Last week, Samar and her friends went on a school trip to Cairo and Giza by bus. In the early morning her father took her to school where she caught the bus. They reached Cairo at nine o'clock. First, they visited the museum and enjoyed seeing many statues. Then, they visited the zoo and saw different animals. They had lunch there and took many pictures. After that, they visited the Pyramids. They came back home at ten o'clock. They were very happy.

# A Choose the correct answers

- 1) They went to Cairo and Giza by (car train bus ship).
- 2 They had lunch at the (Pyramids zoo museum street).
- 3 In the early morning Samar's (mother father brother sister) took her to school.

# B Answer these questions:

- How long did the trip take?
- What did the students see in the zoo?

# The Reader (Amir takes action)

# 4/A Read and write T (True) or F (False):

(4Ms)

- 1 Amir's grandma volunteered to help.
- 2 Amir and his friends couldn't make a change.

# (

# By Choose the correct answer:

- 3 Amir wanted to take (acting action photo message).
- (4) Amir saw the seagull in her (nest bed leg head).



STEPAL

STEP AHEAD

Boolelon Toete

# Part

# 3 Listenius Series





We help to protect our environment. There are kinds of energy we can use which are renewable. They don't run out. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water, and heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and, on the long run, they are better.

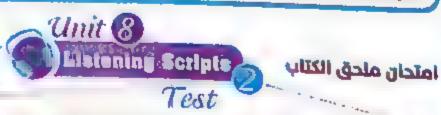


امتحان ملحق الكتاب

People have used hydroelectricity for a very long time. Hydroelectricity means using the energy from moving water to move machines or generate electricity. The Ancient Egyptians and Greeks used the energy in moving water to turn the waterwheels. The waterwheels could move machines and these machines helped with both farming and making food.



Near Aswan, you can see the temples of Abu Simble. Outside the temples, there are some very big statues of Ramses II and his wife Nefertari. Twice a year, people celebrate the Abu Simble Sun Festival there, on February 22nd. On these days, light from the sun at sunrise shines all the way inside the main temple, to the room inside. There are four statues inside the temple.



Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home. If you are invited to an Egyptian family's home, it's a good idea to bring a present, for example chocolates or sweets. However, the host usually doesn't open the present at the time when they get it.



امتحان الكتاب الأساسي

Archaeologists have found lots of artifacts such as tools, pottery, vases, and masks. These can tell us about how people lived in ancient Egypt. For example, we know that ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery. They made pottery vases from clay, and they sometimes decorated them. They used them to hold water and food. They also made small pots for oil or perfume



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

Luxor is full of different monuments from ancient Egypt. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. They can see the Temple of Karnak and the Valley of the Kings Ancient Egyptians buried their kings and queens here for thousands of years. You can see lots of paintings and engravings in the temples. There are lots of other amazing things to see in Egypt



Hello! My name is Amira. I think that the school should create an after school writers' club Don't you think this is a good idea? As a fourth-grade student, like to write stones and reports about things that I think are interesting. I write for my projects and for fun I don't have time to write in the morning, but I do have time to write after school



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages. An instant message (or IM) is a message that you can send on a social media platform. It is a private message so no one else can see it except the person you send it to.



STEP AHEAD



I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic Jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to

Unit 19
Littening Scripts
Test

امتحان ملحق الكتاب

There is a great new ferry system that moves people up and down the river. The new ecological boats use both wind power and electric energy. The ferry can also use the new canals. The residents can use the ferry system to get around the town. Personally, I think it is very important to protect our waterways. If we use greener boats, we can do that. These ecological boats are quieter than other boats too.

امتحان الكتاب الأساسي الأساسي الأساسي الأساسي Test

Climate change affects everyone living on our planet, so we need to try to slow it by working together. Nations are now making plans to work on this problem. We can recycle paper, plastic, and glass at home, but what can nations do? Last week, leaders from every country in the world met for the United Nations Climate Change Conference. They talked about what they can do, but this was not the first time they met. In fact, it was their 26th meeting.



امتحان ملحق الكتاب

On December 12th, 1995, world leaders had a very important meeting. 196 parties signed the Paris Agreement. The parties agreed to reduce global warming to less than 2 degrees Celsius. To do this, countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases immediately. This year at COP26, leaders signed a new document: the Glasgow Climate Pact. They also decided to stop using coal, a fossil fuel. Burning coal creates 40% of carbon dioxide emissions every year, so people must stop using it.

TEP AHEAD







My city is located on the Nile River. There are new homes, schools, and a hospital. There is also a large park where people can go for walks and play sports. All the electricity in my city comes from a solar energy farm in the desert. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs, too. There are palm trees around the houses to help them stay cooler.



These are different ways to send messages from one place to another place. In the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. An email is a digital form of a letter. We send these electronic messages to people using electronic devices. You must have an email account to send these kinds of messages.



A country's hentage is an important part of its identity. All countries have their own hentage, and it comes from its history and traditions. Hentage includes art, buildings, and objects from the past, or things like food, music, and dancing People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. They also developed agriculture and some of the first calendars.



Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see, such as the Pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea, and of course the River Nile. In all parts of the country, you can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. Visitors often like to learn about Egyptian traditions before they come. Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home.

# Pare

# The set Book

# Unit (7)

#### lesson.

Read and complete the text:

1- metropolitan 2- densely 3- buildings

Read and complete the text:

1- environment 2- survive 3- continent

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- environments 2- urban 3- coastal

Choose the correct word:

1- rainforest 2- mountainous

3- coastal 4- urban 5- desert 6- polar

7- rural 8- continent

9- sparsely populated 10- swamps 11- survive 12- densely populated

5 Read and answer the questions:

1- coastal 2- rain 3- Next to the sea.

4- It often rains and the temperature is hot.

Order the words:

1- It often rains in the rainforest environment

The rural environment is sparsely populated

3- What environment do you live in?

4- It is very dry in the desert.

5- Desert can be hot or cold.

6- The urban environment is densely populated

Write a paragraph of (40) words:

I live in the coastal environment. It has many beaches with sand and sometimes there are swamps and forests. I like my environment, but sometimes it is too cold in winter. In my environment there are lots of plants and animals. I like it very much.

#### Lesson (2)

Read and complete the text:

1- picking 2- wearing 3- putting

2 Choose the correct answer: (Vocab)

1- Water pollution 2- Carbon dioxids

3- Climate change 4- Fuel 5- Air pollution

6- cleaning 7- listening

# Choose the correct word: (Grammar)

1- am 2- is 3- are 4- is 5- are 6- is

7- talking 6- is happening

9- trying 10- is 11- is throwing 12- finding 13- is calling 14- doing 15- Are 16- is raining

#### Write in the present continuous:

1- I am walking to school.

2- He's waiting for the bus.

3- I am using recycled plastic.

4- We are learning about climate change.

5- They are driving an electric car at the moment.

6- Hana is watching a TV program today.

7- I am reading an article about the environment.

8- Tarek is listening to a podcast now

#### S Order the words:

1. We burn fuel to make heat.

Carbon dioxide can be dangerous.

3. Sarah is walking to school today.

4. Hana is watching a TV program.

5. Adel is waiting for the bus.

6. What are you doing now?

7. She is collecting plastic bags.

8. Is she listening to a podcast?

#### G Write an email:

From: malak@yahoo.com

To: manar@school.com

Subject: the podcast I listened to yesterday Dear Manar,

How are you? I want to tell you about the podcast I listened to yesterday. It was about pollution. Pollution can damage the environment. Air pollution is caused by the things that people do, such as driving cara and trucks, or making things in factories. Air pollution is dangerous. To solve this problem, we can walk, cycle or use public transportation instead of using cars. See you soon.

Yours,

Malak

# lesson 3

Read and complete the text:

1- fuels 2- burned 3- remains

Term ?



# Read and complete the text:

2- Renewable 1- fossil 3- tidai

#### Choose the correct word:

1- fossil fuels 2- non-renewable 3- solar

4 poliution 5- released 6- tidal

7- resources 8- geothermal 9- renewable

10- wind energy 11- machine to make energy 13- up and down 14- keep

15- the level of the sea gets higher or lower

#### Read and answer the questions:

1- solar 2- turbines

3. There are large farms with lots of solar canels that can make clean electricity.

4. We can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity

#### S Order to make correct sentences:

1. The renewable energy doesn't make pollution

2- A coastal environment can get a lot of

3. What are fossil fuels made from?

4- Wind and wave turbines work by movement

5- Fossil fuels are burned in factores

#### f Read and choose, a, b, or c:

3- (a) 4- (c) 1- (b) 2- (c)

#### 77 Write an email:

From: esra@yahoo.com

To: manar@schoot net Subject: renewable and non-renewable

energy

Yours,

Dear Manar

How are you? There are many types of environments in our country, and we can use different natural resources in different places. For example, in the desert, there are large farms with lots of solar panels that can make clean electricity. A coastal environment can get a lot of wind, so some places have a lot of wind turbines in the sea, close to the coast. in some places, we can use tidal energy from the moving water to make electricity. We also use some non-renewable energies like oil, gas and coal. But renewable energies are much better. See you soon.

Esraa

# Lesson 4

Read and complete the text:

1- Hydroelectricity 2- electricity

3- waterwheels

# Read and complete the text:

2- underground 1- aprings

3- electricity

# Read and complete the dialogue:

3- electricity 2- floish 1- Aswan

#### Choose the correct word:

2- springs 1- country 4- steam

3- volcances 6- generator 5- hydroelectricity

B- flooding 7- location

# Order to make correct sentences:

1- Iceland has more than 600 hot springs

2- There is a lot of hot water underground

3- We can use hydroelectricity to generate electricity

4- The High Dam was finished in 1971

5. The dam has twelve large turbines

# Read and answer the questions:

1- hydroelectricity

2- five

They are 73 lulometers.

4- It is used for an industrial metal plant.

#### 77 Write a paragraph:

The High Dam

Aswan is a beautiful city it has a very big dam, which is the High Dam. It uses water from the Nile to generate electricity. The Dam has twelve large turbines inside. It means using the energy form moving water to move turbines and generate electricity. The dam is very important because it generates more than 10 billion kilowatt hours of electricity a year.

# Lemma 5 6

#### Read and complete the conversation:

1- I disagree 2- I'm not sure 3- I agree

#### Choose the correct word:

1- plant 2- planet 3- protect 4- absorb

- waste 6- heart 6- off 7- garbage





Complete the dialogue with:

1- environment 2- renewable 3- plant

Write the numbers:

P- 10 000 (2) P 100 000 000 (6)

b- 1.000 000 (4) d- 1000 (1)

1.000.000 000 (7)

F 100.000 (3)

g- 10, 000, 000 (5)

Order the words:

1. How many trees will Egypt plant?

Forests can absorb carbon dioxide.

3. Forests make the air cleaner.

4 What can we do to help the environment?

5. We should plant more trees.

Solar energy is cleaner than fossil fuels.

7. We should use fewer fossil fuels.

Turn off lights and don't waste electricity.

Complete the dialogue:

1- recycle 2- garbage 3- electricity

Write a paragraph:

How can we make our town a better place? Our town is the place we live in, so we should make it the best place. We can plant more trees to make more green spaces. We shouldn't drop garbage to keep the town clean. I think the most important thing to help is to turn off lights and not waste electricity. We shouldn't use a lot of cars. We can cycle to have less traffic. We can also build more places to play and do sports

Unit (7) Test (1)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- rural 2- quiet

3- urban

densely populated

Listen and complete:

1- environment 2- Renewable 3 natural 4- pollution

Read and complete the text:

1- springs 2- steam 3- turbines

Read and answer the questions:

1- poler 2- trees

3- Not many people live there.

4- It is cold and windy.

Choose the correct answer:

1- are talking 2- is 2- cooking 4- helping

Order to make correct sentences;

1- Why does Egypt plant a lot of trees?

2- It is important to recycle plastic.

Write a paragraph:

Energy

There are different kinds of energy. There is a renewable energy that doesn't run out. We can get renewable energy from the natural resources such as wind, the sun and the heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and on the long run, they are better. On the other hand, there is a non-renewable energy like oll, coal and gas. They are harmful to the environment.

**Unit (8)** 

Lesson

Choose the correct words:

1- celebrate 2- festival 3- prayers 4-grateful

5- sunnise 6- fairground 7- sacrifice

lantems -P- pilgrimage 10- festival

11-comes up in the morning 12- goes down at night

Read and complete the dialogue:

1. Sham El-Nessim 2-spring 3-sunnse

Read and complete the text:

1. prayers 2- feast 3- pilgrimage

Read and complete the text:

1-lantern 2- electric 3- bright

Order the words:

1 I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family.

2. People paint and decorate eggs at Sham El-Nessim.

3. Eid Al-Adha is an important islamic festival.

Muslims go to the Hajj pilgrimage in Zu

5. How do you make a lantern for Ramadan?

Write a paragraph:

My favorite festival

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. We celebrate it for the start of spring. The weather is usually sunny and warm. We

usually wear colored clothes for their festival, Lots of people go with their families to meet friends in parks, gardens or beaches. We eat lots of nice food like the boiled eggs and salted fish

Lesson 2

Read and complete the text:

1- dish 2- sauce 3- digest

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- dish 2- fish

3- delicious

1 Choose the correct word:

1- always 2- usually 3- sometimes 4- never

5- often 6- always eat 7- often make

& always has 9- never has 10- easy 11- easily 12- good 13- well 14- carefully

15. careful 16. dish 17. recipe 18. meals

Read and answer the questions:

1- evening 2- fatta 3- Fatta 4- Kunafa

S Order the words:

You have different meals in your cook book.

2- How does her Grandma get recipes? -

3- Bread was important in ancient Egypt. -

4- What would you like to make?

5- We always eat beans with bread \*\*

Write a paragraph:

What I have for breakfast 🖘

My favorite dish for breakfast is Ful Medames. It is a common dish in Egypt. This dish uses beans cooked with lemon Julce, garlic, onion, and herbs. We always eat it with bread. I usually eat it with salad and cheese. Ful Medames never has any meat in it. It is so delicious.

Lesson (3

Choose the correct word:

3- wake up 2- wears 1- comes up

6- eat 4- la celebrating 6- visit

10- don't 9- doesn't 7- takes 8- goes 14- Do

13- Does 11- usa 12- eat

17- travel 16- makes 16- are getting

19- is halping 18- ia

20- play

Complete the text:

1- is wearing 2- wears 3- is 4-is celebrating

5- is helping 6- eat 7- are making

Read and choose the correct answer:

2- works 1- is helping him

3- Are you waiting 4- have

5- Does your aunt Salwa speak

7- am wearing 6- usually wear

6- do you usually wear

Order the words:

1. The galabeya has long sleeves.

2. Sandals ere a type of shoe

3. What are they wearing now?

4. White is a good color to wear in hot weather.

Hana is wearing a blue dress.

What do you wear on special days?

S Complete the text:

2- is celebrating 1- lives

4- goes 3- is wearing

6- is giving 5- are sitting

9- give 8- makes 7- is carrying

Write an email:

From: hana@gmail.com

To: laura@yahoo.com

Subject: the traditional clothes in my

country

Dear Laura,

How are you? There are many traditional clothes in our country. In some parts of Egypt, it is traditional for men and women to wear the galabeya, which is long and loose, with long sleeves. In some cities, men and women often wear more modern clothes, such as trousers and shirts, or dresses and skirts, too. My favorite clothes are a dress and new shoes. I like to wear them on special days like Eid Al-Fitr. It is important to look beautiful. See you soon.

Yours.

Hana



Read and complete the text:

2- statues 3- Festival 1- temples

Read and complete the dialogue:

2- Pyramids 3- Temple 1- visit

Choose the correct word:

1- sights

3- invited 2- Visitors 5- quests 6- statue

4- generous 7- for

B- Temples

9- hosts

10- dark



# Read and answer the questions:

2- G|28

3- They like to learn about Egyptian traditions.

4- They are famous for welcoming visitors with food and drink, and for inviting guests to their home.

# Order the words:

- 1- Egypt is a fantastic country to visit.
- 2- There is so much to see
- 3- You can meet friendly people in Egypt.
- 4- Visitors like to learn about Egyptian traditions.
- 5- Egyptian people are famous for welcoming visitors.
- 6- Some Egyptian festivals have traditional food.
- 7- There are four statues inside the temple
- 8- The sun never shines on the statue of Ptah

#### Write a tourist brochure:

Hello. Egypt is a fantastic country to visit. There is so much to see, such as the pyramids of Giza, the old Luxor Temple, the Red Sea and the River Nile. You can see amazing sights, eat delicious food, and meet friendly people. You can have traditional food and enjoy some Egyptian festivals, too. Eid Al-Fitr Is one of them. At Eid Al-Fitr, people eat special cookies called kahk and do lots of happy things.

# Lessons 5

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- saitor
- 2- storm
- 3- island

# Choose the correct answer:

- 1. senk
- 2. sailor
- 3. island
- 4. patient
- 5. successful 6, tale
- 7. wrecked 8 journey
  - 9. servant
- frightened

#### Order the words:

- 1. How did you get to this island?
- The man traveled with many other sailors.
- Why was the important man worried?
- 4. I went on a journey for the King
- 5. How long was the servant on the Island?
- I will send you many presents.
- 7. What is the moral of the story?

# Read and complete the table:

Setting: an Island in the sea

A plot: a servant goes on a journey but he is shipwrecked and meets a strange snake Conflict: the servant wants to go home but he can t

Resolution: He is now sale.

# Choose and make into a story:

Omar and Noha are a brother and sister Every year, they celebrate Sham Et Nessim, Sham El-Nessim is an important festival it is for the start of spring Lots of people go with their families to meet their friends in parks, gardens or beaches People eat colored eggs and saited fich to celebrate. Last Sham El-Nessim, Omar and Noha wanted to decorate eggs, but they were very sad, because they didn't have any paint. Luckily, some of their friends in the park had more paint. They took it and were happy at the land

#### 6 Write an email:

From: youssel@school net To: younes@hotmail.com

Subject: the story I read in the library

Dear Younes.

How are you? I want to tell you about the story I read in the library last week. The title of the story is the tale of the shipwrecked sailor It was about a King who asked an important man to leave Egypt for a special job. The man traveled with many other sailors, but he wasn't successful. My favorite character in it was the servant. He was a sailor too You should read it. The story was interesting See you soon.

Yours. Youssef

# Unit (8) Test

# Listen and circle the correct answer:

- 1- Aswan
- 2- twice
- 3- four
- 4- February

# Listen and complete:

- 1- traditional
- 2- chicken
- 3- generous
- 4- food





1- share 2- recipes

3- delicious

# Read and answer the questions:

2- shipp 3- Moat and falls 1- 1011"

4. Propert Aut and trust clothes

# Choose the correct answer:

1- wear

2- am talking

3- celebrates

4- eat

#### Order the words:

- t. Ancient Egyptians often wore beautiful lewelry
- 2. What are you doing now, Heba?

# 😽 Write an email:

From: ahmed@hotmall.com

To: tom@yahoo.com Subject: Eld Al-Adha

Dear Tom

How are you? I want to tell you about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. Eid Al-Adha is a very important islamic festival. It usually lasts for four days, it celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. Eld Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Eihlija when Muslims go to the Haj pilgrimage During Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best clothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast together. At Eld Al-Adha many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a traditional dish called fatta. Write to me you acon

Yours. Ahmed

Unit (9)

# Lesson • Read and complete the text:

1- hentage

2- traditions

3- objects

# Read and complete the dialogue:

2- Nile 3- fertile 1- hentage

# Choose the correct word:

1 heritage

3. exploring 2 past

4. flood

5 connected 8, hervesting

8 divilization 9, museums 7. calendar 10. Archaeologists

# Read and complete the text:

1- flooded

2- June to September

3- growing

4- October to February

5- crops

6- March to May

# 5 Read the text and then answer:

1- temples

2- calendars

3- Because it is a part of a country's Identity

4- Heritage includes art, buildings and objects from the past, or things like food, music and dancing.

#### Order the words:

1. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage

2 What do farmers grow in Egypt?

3.1 like visiting museums with my parents

4 Ancient Egyptians developed a system of writing.

5. Which sites would you like to visit?

6 The farming seasons were connected to the Nile

#### Write an email:

From: adel@school.net To: jack@hotmail.com

Subject: Egypt's hentage

Dear Jack.

How are you? All countries have their own heritage, and it comes from its history and traditions. People in ancient Egypt built many amazing temples and monuments, and this is an important part of our heritage. I'm very interested in Egypt's heritage and I enjoy learning about it. I visit museums with my parents to learn about the things people did in the past, Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage, too. The Nile used to flood every year, making the soil more ferble. This is why ancient Egyptians could farm the land and it led to a growth in civilization. Write to me soon.

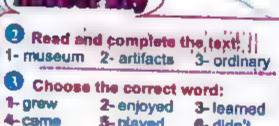
Yours. Adel

Read and complete the text:

1- box

2- counters





4- CBITTO 5-played 6- didn't 7-do 8-00 9- Did 10-help 11-100 12- were

13-was 14- was 15- were 16-were 17-was 16- visiting, ...

19-weering 20-were digging 21-was studying

22- was making 23-found 24-stopped 25-were taking

Read and complete the text:

1-were looking 2- was reading 3- learned 4- found

5-turned on 6- saw 7-was wearing ... -was sitting was playing

S Read and choose the correct word:

1. The box had beautiful pictures on the side.

2. Sara was in the museum with her dad.

What did Sara see in the museum?

4 It looks like an old senat game

Senet is the world's oldest board game.

Complete the sentences:

1-First 2-Next 3-Then 4-Finally

Write an email:

reem@yahoo.com

Tex sarah@gmail.com

Subject my visit to the museum Dear Sarah.

How are you? I want to tell you about my visit to the museum last week, I went to the museum with my family. There were lots of very old things. I stopped in front of a long wooden box. It was the senet game. Senet is the world's oldest board game. Lots of people used to play senet in Ancient Egypt. We enjoyed our time there. Everything was interesting. See you soon.

Yours. Reem



Read and complete the text:

1-clay 2-food 3-0I Read and complete the text:

1-tombs 2-Builders 3-stone

Read and complete the dialogue: 1- cruise 2- Luxor 3- Temple

Ohoose the correct answer:

2. archaeologists

1. sites 5. perfume 4. vases 3. clay

7. Roman Theatre 6. tombs

9. Valley of the Kings B. cruise

10. burled

Order the words:

1. The Pyramids and the Sphinx are in Giza.

2. How do many tourists travel to Luxor?

3. Saggara is one of the biggest sites in

4. Many tourists visit Luxor from a Nile River cruise. . .

5. Where can you see engravings?

6. What would you like to visit?

Write a paragraph:

Alexandria

Alexandria is one of the biggest cities in Egypt, I live in Alexandria. It used to be the capital city of Egypt. There are lots of things to see in this port city, including a Roman theater, the old town, and Qaitbay citadel. It had the first library of Alexandria, which is famous all over the world. I love my city Alexandria very much.

.lesson 4

3- show

Read and complete the text:

1- Day 2- design 4- exhibition

5- bar chart Read and complete the dialogue:

1- project 2- design 3- games

Read again and complete:

1- horizontal - X-axis 2- vertical - y-axis

Order the words;

Adam was doing his school project.

2. What do you have to do?

3. What are you going to put in your museum?

4. Which exhibition had the most visitors?



#### S Write an email:

From: adam@gmail.com To: amgad@school.net **Subject:** my school project Dear Amgad,

How are you? I want to tell you about my school project about the International Museum Day, I am doing my school project with my friends. We have to design a new museum and say what is in it. There are many different exhibitions that show different things. We have to show which the most popular exhibition is. We are going to put a room about art, and one about games in our museum. See you SOON.

Yours. Adam

# Lessons

Read and complete the text:

1- boat 2- tomb

Read and complete the dialogue:

1- statue

2- old

3- limestone

#### Order the words:

1. What is it made of?

- 2. This mask has traveled to other countries.
- 3. Where is the statue from?
- 4. How old is the mask?
- This is the largest statue in Egypt.
- 8. Which artifact is the oldest?

#### 😈 Write a report:

Archaeologists were working in the desert when they found an amezing site. This is a very old city and nobody knew it was there. They found it yesterday, it is in Giza. They found lots of artifacts and statues, it will be a treasure for our country. Tourists will come to see it soon.

Write a paragraph: Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat Pharaoh Khufu's solar boat is an amazing boat. Archaeologists found it in King Khufu's tomb. It is a bout 4,800 years old. It's made of wood. It is very big. It is 42 meters long. It is located in Giza. Egyptians and tourists like to visit it. It is a great discovery.

# Unit (9) Test (3)

U Listen and circle the correct answer.

1- monuments 2- cruise

2. burled

4. engravings

Listen and complete:

4. Agriculture

2. flood

3- seasons

4- Nile

#### Reed and complete the text:

1- Archaeologists 2- monuments

civilizations

#### Read and answer the questions:

1- heritage 2- museums

3- They learned by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza

4- They developed a system of writing.

#### Choose the correct answer:

1- decorated

2- was

3- drinking

4- were exploring

#### Order to make correct sentences:

You can see engravings in the temples.

2. Which library is famous all over the world?

## 🚷 Write a paragraph:

Tutankhamun's mask

Tutankhamun tomb is very famous. It is in Luxor in the Valley of the Kings.

Archaeologists found his amazing mask in his tomb. Tutankhamen's mask is made of gold. It is over 3,000 years old. It is very big. It is 54 cm tall. Luxor has a lot of monuments. Egyptians and tourists like to visit Luxor.

# Unit (10)

# Lesson

Read and complete the text:

1. communication 2. signals 3. electronic

Read and complete the dialogue: 1- messages 2- birds 3- technology

#### Choose the correct answer:

1. electronic devices

2. vioq

3. blog

4. email

5. website

6. presentation

7. electronic device

8. communication







# Read the following text:

1- messages 2- account

3- They used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other

4- Today, people use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages

#### Order the words:

1. Why do people give presentations?

2. We use electronic devices to send messages.

3. Where can you send an Instant message?

4. A blog is a special kind of website.

5. How can people access websites?

Write a paragraph;

The means of communication I use There are different kinds of communications on the internet. They are Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, WhatsApp and Telegram. Each one of us uses the means that he likes.

For me, I use Facebook to share my posts and see my friends' posts daily. I also use Instagram to share my photos with my friends. And of course I use WhatsApp to send messages to my friends.

# -lasten-

Read and complete the text:

1. backpack 2. adventure 3. newspaper

Choose the correct answer: (Vocab) 1. writer 2. Touch typing 3. feet

4. break 5. hand

Complete the conversation:

1= should 2- should 3. should 4- shouldn't 5- should 6- shouldn't

#### Choose the correct answer: (Structure)

1- should 2. should 3- shouldn't

4- should 5- shouldn't 6- shouldn't

# What you should and shouldn't do:

10- should

1. shouldn't 2. should 3- should 4- should 6- shouldn't 8- should 7- should 8- shouldn't

f'nbluoda 🕰

Order the words:

1- You should choose a title for your story,

2- You shouldn't copy another person's

3- You should check your spelling and Orammar

4- You should ask a friend to read your

5- You shouldn't write your story by hand

6- You should put your story on the school website.

# 7 Write an email:

From: rania@yahoo.com To: radwa@yahoo.com Subject: how to write a story Dear Radwa,

How are you? I want to tell you how to write a story. You shouldn't write your story by hand. You should use a writing program. You should try to touch type. You should check your spelling. You shouldn't have any spelling or grammar mistakes You should ask a grown-up to check the spelling and grammar for you. You should check your work. You shouldn't forget the punctuation. You should ask a friend to read your story before you publish it. See you soon.

Yours. Rania

# Lettun

Read and complete the text;

1. set 2- signed 3- comments

#### Read and complete the dialogue: 1- account 2- online

3- hobby

Read and complete the text:

1- social media 2- photos 3- private 4- comments 5- video 6- posted

# Order the words:

1- He talked about his favorite hobby.

2- What do you use for your account?

3- Someone made fun of Youssel's clothes.

4- Can I get a social media account?

5- Only your friends can see your videos.

6- Do you think social media is bad?

7- We need to make your page private.



#### Write a text of (50) words: Social Media

Social media plays an important role in our life. There are different types of social Media like Facebook, Instagram, YouTube, WhatsApp and Twitter

They have good things and bad things. You can share your photos and write your opinions freely, but you may have bad comments. You can make your page private. So social media is good only if we use it well.



#### Tread and complete the text:

1- reports 2- projects

#### Choose the correct answer:

1. but 2. or 3. and 4, but 6 and 7 or 5 and 8 or

#### Circle the correct answer:

2-7 1- or 3- at 6- and 4- but 5- ,

#### Write the missing mark or word:

3- or - ? 1- in - ? 2- . - . 5- but - . 4- at - in -.

#### Read the letter and answer:

1- He wants to open a social media account for the fourth grade students

They write about life in the fourth grade.

Create games, puzzles, and art work.

4- He likes to contact fourth-grade students In different countries.

5- They would learn about different cultures and how to use the internet safely

#### Order the words:

1. I like to write short stories and reports

2. Amira writes for her projects and for fun.

My friends are interested in writing.

4. Amira is in the fourth grade.

I don't have any free time today.

6. She likes poetry and fiction,

# Write a letter to the editor:

I am writing because I think that the school should create a new club to join with my classmates.

Don't you think this is a good idea?

As a fourth-grade student, I like to play football at the club to be fit and for fun. There are lots of other clubs like the games club, the science club and the cooking club, currently, there is no club for doing aports and it is so important for us to be fit Don't you agree? Sincerally yours,

Malak Ehab 4th grade

lene | 5 | 6

Read and complete the text:

2- airplanes 1- health

3- fossil

#### Read and complete the dialogue:

1- pollution 2- power plants

Choose the correct answer:

3. poliution 1. invented 2. Air

6. Greening 4. factories 5. towers

9. shade 8. absorb 7 summer

10. oxygen 11. warm

#### Read and answer the questions:

1- It is created by airplanes, traffic, factories and power plants. When we burn fossil fuels and use strong chemicals.

2- They help to clean gases and pollution produced by factories and industry.

3- Greening is growing a wall of plants on the side of a building

4- The plants absorb carbon droxide and they produce oxygen. They also catch dust and other harmful pollution.

5- In hot countries, the green walls provide shade and help to cool the air. The cool air stops the buildings from getting too hot in

6- The plants provide homes for bees. Insects and birds.

#### 5 Make a presentation to your class:

A new social media platform for kids Good morning, everyone Today I'm going to talk about a new social media platform for kids, it is called "YouTube kids". The users of this platform will be over 13 years old. Let's start with the topics for this platform. We will talk about how to be a good student in the school. All videos will be about good students. We will share pictures about this topic. There will be a

short time for games and competitions. Now, let's look at the rules. You should be over thirteen years. Your parents should accept the rules of the platform. To finish "YouTube Kids" is a new social

media platform and it will be interesting. Thank you very much.

Are there any questions?

Unit (10) Testa(4)

Listen and circle the correct answer; 1-devices 2-private 3-email 4-account

Listen and complete:

1-reports 2-projects 3-interested 4-dub

Read and complete the dialogue;

1-story 2- touch type 3- publish

Read and answer the questions:

1- one person 2- website

3- A blog is a special kind of website It usually belongs to one person,

4- A blog belongs to one person who posts information for others to read.

On a vlog, people post videos they make instead of written lexts.

6 Choose the correct an . . . 1-should 2- but 3- speak

Order to make correct sentences;

1-What problems does air pollution cause? 2- You shouldn't write your story by hand.

8 Write an email:

From: hany@school net To: ramy@hotman.com Subject using social media Dear Ramy.

How are you? I want to tell you my opinion about using social media. I bought a new smartphone yesterday. It is so important for me. I use it for calling my friends and my family.

There are different kinds of social media that I can use I can use Facebook to write my opinions and share photos. I can also use WhatsApp for chatting. There are lots of good things on my phone. The only bad thing is that it wastes much of my time. See you soon. Yours.

Hanv

Unit (11

Lesson

Read and complete the dialogue: 3- trip

2- traffic jam 1- bus

Read and complete the text; 1- transportation 2- traffic 3- destination

Read and answer the questions:

1- four 2- traffic lam

3- It takes about an hour.

4- Because my school is too far to walk to.

Chaose the correct wor

1-public 2-jam 3-trip 4-light 5destination 6- on 7- by 8- in 9- on 10- on 11-by 12-by

5 Order to m e c

1- Cities are exciting places to live.

2- Do you go to school by car?

3- The trip to school takes an hour.

4- Do you get to school on time?

5- I can't make the trip on foot.

6 Write on an

From: wa ...

To: wa lee Subject the .

Dear Wael.

How are you? I love my city but every morning we have to sit in a traffic jam on my way to school. The cars and buses stop, and we can't move. The trip to school sometimes takes us an hour! The traffic lights are often red and that makes the traffic even worse. We leave home very early, so I can make it to school on time. I can't make the trip on foot because my school is too far to walk to. What about the traffic in your neighborhood? Write to

Yours. Walid

terson

3- parks

1 Read and complete the distogue

Choose the correct answer:

1- recycling bins

2- Green spaces 3- residents 4- reduce 6- reuse 5- garbage 7- recycle 8- volunteers



Choose the correct negative form:

1- unhealthy

2- dislike

5- disconnect

4- unfriendly

6- unhappy

disagree

7- unpopular

8- dishonest

Choose the correct word: (Grammar)

1-strong 2- healthier 3- the most

4. heavier than 5- bigger 7. less 8- the most 9- the least 10- better

11. more expensive 12- greenest

13- worst 14- the best 15- cleaner

Order to make correct sentences:

1- Cairo is busier than Damietta.

2. The Sahara desert is the biggest in the

A gold medal is better than a silver medal.

4. Solar energy is more ecological than fossil fuels.

5- Tutankhamun is the most famous pharaoh in the world.

#### 🕜 Write an email:

From: ali@yahoo com To: ahmed@gmail.com

Subject: keeping our environment clean

Dear Ahmed,

How are you? I want to tell you what you have learned to keep your environment clean. I learned a lot about creating a cleaner environment. It's Important to have green spaces in a city. The air is cleaner there. People are happier when they have green spaces. So, we need more parks and trees in our cities. If we need to water these green spaces, we can recycle water. One of the best things we can do is to use recycling bins for our glass, paper, plastic, and metal And I learned that in some places, people volunteer to pick up garbage in parks. See YOU BOON.

Yours.

Ali

Lesson (3

Read and complete the text:

3. goods 2. wagons

1- boats Read and complete the dialogue:

2- electric 1- gasoline

3- solar

#### Choose the correct answer:

2. airplane 3 subway 1. animals

6 boats 5 wagons

4 carta 8. train conces

9 rocket

10 streetcar 11 airplanes

# (I) Order to make correct sentences:

Ships with steam engine could travel fester.

2- The first steam train was in Wales.

3- The subway in London opened in 1863.

4- People are developing cleaner forms of transportation.

6- Engineers are designing greener airplanes and ships.

6. There are electric buses that use solar energy.

## (S) Read and answer the questions:

1- Because all the major cities were along 2. Papyrus and rope. the River Nile.

3. It was used for traveling short distances.

To catch the wind. 4. From wood.

6. To make the boats move and control the direction.

# विज्ञालियाँ 4

Read and complete the text:

1. electricity

2. solar

3. fossil

# Read and complete the text:

1- green spaces

2. trees

3. solar panels

4. recycling bins

bike paths

f residents

7- traffic lams

transportation

#### Choose the correct answer:

1. roof

2. canal

3. gas

4. waterway 5. louder

6. water vapor

#### (I) Order the words:

Parks are important for everyone.

2. The new homes have solar panels on their roofs.

There are palm trees around the houses.

4. Solar energy is better than burning fossil fuels.

5. It's very important to protect our waterways.

6 The sir will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles.

7. Hydrogen vehicles produce werm air and water vapor.

You can ride your bike on the bike paths.



# Read and answer the questions:

1- Nile River

2- roofs

3- The electricity comes from a solar energy farm in the desert.

They help houses to stay cooler.

Write a paragraph: My Ideal city

My city is located on the sea. There are new buildings, schools, hospitals and parks. I believe that parks are important for everyone. There are recycling bins in the parks and streets, so people can recycle their plastic bottles.

All the electricity in my city comes from a wind energy farm next to the sea.

Lessens 516

Read and complete the dialogue; 1. advantages 2. underground 3-expensive

# Choose the correct answer:

1. streetcar 2 disadvantage 3 cab

4. subway 5. ferry 6. advantage

# 3 Order the words:

- How do you get to school every day?
- 2. You can travel on water by ferry.

I go to school by car.

- 4 She gets exercise on the way to school.
- 5. Which types of transport do you use?

# Write an email:

From: nour@yahoo.com To: malak@hotman.com

Subject: the types of transportation Dear Malak.

How are you? I want to tell you about the types of transportation that people use in our country. People can use a car, a cap, a train, a subway and an simplane for long distances. All this transportation is now more ecological. There are electric cabs, but they don't have any drivers. I am sure that the air will be cleaner if we use electric vehicles. We also have buses that use power from hydrogen gas. I like the subway because it is fast and comfortable. My city is wonderful See you soon.

Yours. Nour

# Unit (11) Test (5)

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

4. on foot 2. trip 3- Worse 1. jam

Listen and complete:

2. er vironmi nt 1. gasoline

4- greener 3. transportation

Read and complete the dialogue:

3- pall -1- environment 2- Space -

# Read and answer the questions:

1 - ecological 2- drivers

3- Warm air and water vapor

4- We can ride bikes all around the city on the blke paths.

Choose the correct answer:

1- larger 2- more 3- happiest 4- the least

#### Order to make correct sentences:

1- What animals do people use for transportation?

The ferry can carry a lot of people

Write a paragraph:

There are different form of a apportation in my city I go to school by bus. I like it because I see my classmates every day My sister goes to school on foot because her school is next to our house. My mother goes to work by taxi. My father goes to work in his car

# Unit (12)

Read and complete the text:

1- erosion 2- d ought 3- water shortage

4- fleod 6- andshift

#### Read and complete the dialogue: 1. drought

2- affect 3. shortage

#### Choose the correct answer 1 Erosion

2. currents 4. fossil fuels

3 erode

5. Climate 6. dry 7 Farmers 8. shortage

# Order the words:

- 1- The waves in the sea can erode beaches.
- 2- How can erosion affect humans?
- 3- Burning fossil fuels results in climate
- What can we do to slow down erosion?



TEP AHEAI

#### 6. Climate change causes sea levels to rise

# Aeston 2

#### Read and complete the text:

1- ecomendly 2- electric 3- environment

#### Read and complete the dialogue:

1. shortage 2- washing 3- reuse

#### Read and complete the text:

1- plant 2- will be 3- are 4- will look 5- live 6- will feet

#### Choose the correct word:

1- use / will be 2- will exercise / have 3- melt / will rise 4- won't help / use

5- rains / will be 6- won't use / cares

7- does not rain / won't have

8- rise / will be 9- won't save / burn

11- cut / will get 10- will be / don't use

#### Choose the correct word:

3- will play 1- will win 2- will help

5- cause 6- won't 7- won't 4- will go

8- will 9- come 10- buy 11- Will 12- want

13-goes 14-will save 15-will help

17- won't get up 16- don't throw

18- doesn't come 19- Will 20- has

22- WITS 21- be

#### Order the words:

1 The drought will cause a water shortage.

2. Will you go shopping this afternoon?

3. I won't go to the beach on Friday.

4 Will Tarek buy an electric car?

If it rains a lot where will be a flood

#### 7 Write an email:

From: adel@hotmail.com

To: omar@school.net

Subject: a project to help the environment

Dear Omar,

How are you? I want to tell you about a project I want to do to help the environment. We can help the environment by planting trees. If we plant more trees in our cities, the air will be cleaner. Planting trees can make the air, the streets and the buildings cool. We should also create more green spaces. See you soon.

Yours. Adel

# Lemon 3

# Read and complete the text:

3- dimate 1- affects 2- plane

#### Choose the correct answer:

2. conference 1. pact

3. party

4. treety

5. headline

6. lead-in

7. caption

8. bady

#### Choose the correct answer:

1- hut 2- and 3- or 4- so 5- so 6- and 7- or 8- but 9- and 10- but 11- or 12- so 13- and 14- so 15- but 16- or 17- so

20- and 18- and 19- but

# Lessons 4 5 6

Read and complete the text:

2- dessert 1- chickpeas

# Read and complete the dialogue:

1- healthier 2- environment 3- remember

# Read and complete the dialogue:

3- dessert 2- main course

#### Order the words:

1. Which foods come from plants?

2. Which foods do you often eat?

3. What is your favorite food?

4. What are the best Egyptian dishes?

5. Which food comes from Egypt?

6. How can we shop more responsibly?

7. How can countries work to reduce ctimate change?

#### Write an email:

From: jana@gmail.com

To: huda@gmail.com

Subject: my favorite meal

Dear Huda.

How are you? I want to tell you about my favorite meal. My favorite meal is koshari. It's made with rice, lentils, chickpeas, pasta, tomatoes, and onions. It's healthler than a burger. We can have it with salad. We can buy it from a restaurant. We can also make it at home. My favorite dessert is ice cream. I think koshari la a wonderful dish. See you soon. Yours.

Jana



# Unit (12) Test (6)

- Listen and circle the correct answer: 1-slow 2- plans 3- recycle 4- Conference
- D Listen and complete:
- 1- Drought 2-dry 3-danger 4-water shortage
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- agreement 2- global
- greenhouse gases
- Read and answer the questions:
- 1- erode 2- climate change
- > When rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows. 4- By heavy agriculture and burning fossil fuels.
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1-so 2- will reduce 3- 00 4- writes
- Order to make correct sentences:
- 1- What did the leaders agree to do?
- 2-We need to slow down climate change.
- ₩rite a paragraph:

#### Global warming

Global warming is a very serious problem that the whole world faces it's the rising of the temperature of Earth. This causes very dangerous problems like ice melting, forest fires, erosion, drought and food shortage. We should find a solution to this problem and we can do this by reducing the emission of carbon dioxide and the other bad gases into the almosphere

# Final Revision Part Unit (7

- Read and complete the text: 1- rural 2- animals 3- sparsely
- Read and complete the text:
- 1 reduce 2- transportation 3- cleaner
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- desert 2- solar 3- electricity
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- generate 2- location 3- dam
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- Antarctic 2- windy 3- trees
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- emissions 2- climate 3- atmosphere
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- podcast 2- air pollution 3- chemicals
- Choose the correct
- 1- mountainous 2- rural 3- rainforest
- 4- urban 5- desert 6- polar 7- coastal
- 8- sparsely populated 9- Water pollution
- 10- Fuel 11- Air pollution12-Carbon dioxide
- 13- Climate change 14- Emissions
- 15-hydroelectricity16-springs 17-volcanoes
- 18- non-renewable 19- Renewable energy
- 20- tidal energy 21- solar energy
- 22- wind turbines 23- off 24- thousand

# Choose the correct:

- 1- Is 2-18 3- are 4- 15 5- are 6- are 7- am
- 8- 15 9- heating 10- traveling 11- burning 13- Is 14- coming
- Order the words:
- 1- Lots of animals live in the rainforest environment.
- 2- There are awamps in the coastal environment.
- 3- The animals find clever ways to survive
- 4- Most people live in the urban environment.
- 5- It's difficult to travel in the mountainous
- 6- What can I do to help the environment?

ea.

- 7. They are helping to stop pollution.
- n. We get energy from natural renewable resources
- g. We get tidal energy from the moving water.
- 10. The wind or water make turbines move.
- 11. It's very hot under the ground.
- 12- Why are fossil fuels non-renewable?
- 13. Steam comes up and moves turbines.
- 14. Its electricity comes from renewable \*OUTC85
- 15- Forests can absorb carbon dioxide.
- 16- Trees are important in protecting our planeL

# الكتاب الأساسي

- Listen and circle the correct answer:
  - 3- urban 1- rural 2- quiet
  - 4- densely populated
- 2 Read and complete the text:
- 1- springs 2- steam 3- turbines
- Read and answer the questions:
- 2- trees 3- animals 1- polar
- 4- Not many people live there.
- 5- It is cold and windy.
- 5 Choose the correct answer:
- 3- cooking 2- is 1- are talking
- 5- Is 4- helping
- 6 Order to make correct sentences.
- 1- Why does Egypt plant a lot of trees?
- 2- It is important to recycle plastic.
- 3- We get tidal energy from moving water.

## Write a parograph:

Energy

There are different kinds of energy There is a renewable energy that doesn't run out. We can get renewable energy from the natural resources such as wind, the sun and the heat inside the Earth. These kinds of energy don't make pollution, and on the long run, they are better. On the other hand, there is a non-renewable energy like oil, coal and gas. They are harmful to the anvironment.

#### (स्रिक्रिकिक Unit (7-) Test (1)

- UListen and circle:
  - 1- hydroelectricity
- 2- moving 4- electricity
- 3- waterwheels

- Read and complete:
- 3- turbines 2- flooding 1- generate
- 🚺 Read then answer:
- 1- non-renewable 2- run out 3- coal
- 4- The remains of very old plants and animals.
- 5- A lot of carbon dioxide is released into the atmosphere.
- G Choose:
- 1- are
- 3- singing 2- is happening
- 4- Are
- 5- is washing
- Order the words:
- 1- How many trees will Egypt plant?
- 2- Coal, gas and oil are fossil fuels.
- 3- The animals find clever ways to survive

#### 7 Write an email

From arrangyahoo.com

To: kareem@school.net

Subject, my favorite environment

Dear kareem.

I am happy to write to you this email. How are you? And how is your family? My favorite environment is the rural environment. There aren't many houses or buildings here, so this place often has more animals and plants. Not many people live in this environment. It can have lots of different kinds of weather but it's a quiet place to live. What's your favorite environment?

That's for all yours.

Amr

# Unit (8)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- celebrating 2- spnng
  - 3- sunrise
- Read and complete the text: 3. sights 1- pyramids 2- Nile
- Read and complete the text: 1- beaf 2- cooked 3- spices
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- festival 2- traditional 3- decorate

# S Read and complete the text:

1-traditions 2- quests

# Read and complete the dialogue:

1- sandals 2- leather 3- linen

#### Choose the correct:

1- sunrise 2- fairground 3- secrifice

4- celebrate 5- festival - Sunsel

7- prayers 8- gratoful 9- Lanterns 10- feast

11- pilgrimage 12-hosts 13- recipe

14- dish 15- meals 18- sights 17- generous

18- Guesta 19- invite 20- for

# 8 Choose the correct:

1- easy 2- easily 3- lives 4- go 5- makes

6-gives 7-doesn't 8-don't 9-play

10- wear 11- Does 12- Do 13- wears

14- are talking 15- celebrates 16- eat

17- is celebrating 18- is helping 19-eat 20- are making

# Order the words:

1- The festival is for the start of spring

2- The ancient Egyptians celebrated Sham El-Nessim.

3- The weather is usually warm and sunny.

4-1 always wake up at sunrise.

5- We eat nice food and play games.

6-There are fairgrounds with rides for children

7- Eid Al-Adha lasts for four days.

8- We give out meat to our family

9-We go to mosque for prayers.

10-Why do people make lanterns for Ramadan?

11- How do you celebrate Eid Al-Adha?

12- How does Grandma get her recipes?

13- Can you make all these recipes?

14- This dish never has any meat.

15- Fattah has layers of rice and bread

16-Which dish doesn't have any meat?

17-Why did ancient Egyptians wear white dothes?

16- You can see amazing sights in Egypt?

19-What are you wearing today?

20- What do you wear for sports?

21- Egyptian people are famous for inviting quests.

22- People bake special cookies called kahk

23- The man traveled with many other sailors.

24- I went on a journey for the lung

25- How did you get to this island?

# 🚻 Write an email:

From: amria@gmail.com

To walaa@omail.com

Subject my trip Dear walaa.

How are you? And you family? I miss you so much, I'm writing to tell you about my trip to Luxor and Aswan 1 traveled to Luxor and Aswan last week, I traveled with my family by bus. Egypt is a fantastic country to visit! There is so much to see such as the old Luxor Temple and the temples of Abu Simbel I really enjoyed my time. See you soon

> yours. Amma

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Aswan

2-tarces

3- four

4- February

Read and complete the dialogue:

1-share

2- reapes

3- deficious

Read and answer the questions:

1- four 2- sheep

4- Meat and fatta.

5- People wear their best clothes

Choose the correct answer:

1- wear

2- am talking

3- meat

3- celebrates

4- eat

5- easily

# Order the words:

1- Ancient Egyptians often wore beautiful jewelry.

2-What are you doing now, Heba?

3- I always wake up at sunrise.

# Write an email:

From: ahmed@hotmail.com

To: tomedyahoo.com

Subject: Eid Al-Adha

Dear Torn,

How are you? I want to tell you about Eid Al-Adha in Egypt. Eid Al-Adha is a very important Islamic festival. It usually lasts for four days it celebrates the time when Ibrahim (peace be upon him) listened to God in a dream. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu Elnijja when Muslims go to the Haij pilgnmage. During





Eid Al-Adha, we go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. We wear our best ciothes for the celebrations and we visit our family and friends. We give each other presents and we have a feast logether. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of its meat in a Iraditional dish called fatta. Write to me you ROOM.

Yours,

Ahmed

# Unit (8) Test (2)

Ulaten and circle:

1- traditions 2- famous 3- present 4- host

Read and complete the dialogue:

2- sights 3- generous 1- pyramids

Read then answer:

2- spring 3- Monday 1- family

4- They celebrated it as a festival of creation and new life

5- The weather is usually sunny and warm

5 Choose the correct answer:

3- often make 2- visit 1- never

5- well 4- Does

Order the words:

1- What do you wear on special days?

2- You can meet friendly people in Egypt.

3- How did you get to this island?

Write a text of (50) words:

Eid Al-Adha is an Islamic festival It lasts for four days. At Eid Al-Adha, many people sacrifice a sheep and eat some of ils meat in a traditional dish called fatta. We go to the mosque for prayers and we are grateful for all the good things in our lives. Eid Al-Adha is during the month of Zu-Elhijje when Muslims go to the Haji pligrimage. At Eld Al-Adha we visit our families and our friends. We give them presents too

Unit (9)

Read and complete the text:

3- museums 2- historical 1- divilization

Read and complete the text:

1- Sphinx 2- Archaeologists

Read and complete the text:

1- heritage 2- flood

Read and complete the text: 1- mask 2- gold 3- valley

S Read and complete the text:

3- library 1- capital 2- theatre

() Choose the correct:

1- traditions 2- harvesting 3- monuments

4- developed 5- Heritage 6- historical

7- museums 8- civilizations 9- fields

10- growing 11- flooded 12- ferble

13- day 14- flooding 15- site 16- carved

18- artifacts 17- engravings

20- vases 19- tools

77 Choose the correct:

1- used 2- wore 3- played 4- found

5-buned 6-flooded 7- made 8- didn't

9- do 10- go 11- Did 12- buy 13- see

14- was 15- were 16- were 17- was

18- was 19- were 20- were digging

22- were writing 21- was having

(I) Order the words:

1- All countries have their own heritage.

2- Ancient Egyptians built amazing temples and monuments.

The Nile used to flood every year.

What would you like to visit?

5- Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage.

6- There were three of farming seasons.

7- What do you have to do?

8- Farmers planted lots of different crops.

9- Hentage includes objects from the past.

10- I'm very proud of my henlage.

11- What is the Sphinx made of?

12- Farmers cut the crops and stored them.

13- Hentage comes from history and traditions.

14- My dad made me a game.

15- Which places in Egypt have a lot of agriculture?

16- The goals over a hill were waking a way.

17- Sara was in the museum with her morn.

18- They were looking at Egyptian artifacts.

19- Lots of people used to play senet.

20- We have to design a new museum.

- 21- There are many different exhibitions.
- 22-Lots of tourists visit Egypt every year. 23-Ancient Egyptians used lots of pottery.
- 24- They made pottery vases from clay.
- 25- Alexandris used to be the capital city of Egypt.

# Unit (9) Test (3) कार्नाकिशास्त्र

- Listen and circle the correct answer:
  - 1- monuments 2- cruise
  - 3- buried
- 4- engravings
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- Archaeologists 2-monuments
- 3- civilizations
- Read and answer the questions:
- 1- heritage 2-museums 3-heritage
- 4- They learned by exploring historical sites at places like Abu Simbel, Luxor and Giza.
- 5- They developed a system of writing.
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- decorated
- 2-was
  - 3-drinking
- were exploring
- 2-eat
- Order to make correct sentences:
- 1- You can see engravings in the temples.
- 2-Which library is famous all over the World?
- 3- Alexandria used to be the capital city of Egypt.
- 7 Write a paragraph:

#### Tutankhamun's mask

Tutankhamun tomb is very famous, it is in Luxor in the Valley of the Kings.

Archaeologists found his amazing mask in his tomb. Tutankhamen's mask is made of gold, it is over 3,000 years old, it is very big. It is 54 cm tall. Luxor has a lot of monuments. Egyptians and tourists like to Visit Luxor.

# Unit (9) Test (3)

- U Listen and circle:
  - 1- Archaeologists
- 2- pottery
- 3- pots
- 4- day
- Read and complete:
- 1-stone
  - 2- languages 3- Egypt
- Read then answer:
- 1-four thousand 2-simpler 3-Tourists

- 4- Because of amazing archaeological sites.
- 5- tourists want to see the large monument, pyramids, and temples.
- Choose the correct:
- 3- riding 2- watch 1- arew
- 5- didn't 4- were walking
- Order the words:
- I'm Interested in Egypt's heritage.
- 2-What do farmers grow in Egypt?
- 3- Senet is the world's oldest board game.
- Write a text of (60) words:

Agriculture is an important part of Egypt's heritage. The Nile used to flood every year. making the soil more fertile. There were three seasons of farming in ancient Egypt, In the flooding season, the fields were full of water. In the growing season, farmers grow their crops. In the harvesting season, farmers cut the crops and stored them safely before the Nile flooded again. The ancient Egyptians were clever farmers.

# Unit (10)

# This (10)

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- digital 2- messages 3-account
- Read and complete the text:
- 1-page 2-access 3- smalphones
- Read and complete the text:
- 1-vlogs 2-reliable 3- material
- Read and complete the text:
- 1-blog 2-information 3- texts
- S Read and complete the text;
- 1-signed 2-nasty 3- private
- Read and complete the text: 1-vacuum 2-dean
- 3- breathe Read and complete the dialogue;
- 1-serious 2-factories 3- fuels
- (8) Choose the correct:
  - 1- vlog
    - 2-touch type 3- presentation
- 4- websites 5- email 8- device
- 6- sign in
- account •







13- posted 14- straight 15- break

16- backpack 17- newspaper

18- publish 19- signs into 20- sign up

#### Oppose the correct:

1. should 2- shouldn't 3- should 4-shouldn't 5- should 6- should 7- shouldn't 8- should g. shouldn't 10- go 11- eat 12- but 13- or 14- and 15- in 16- or 17- but 18- in

#### Order the words:

1. An instant message is a private message.

2- A website is a home page on the Internet. 3- A biog belongs to one person.

4- Why do people give presentations?

5- You can ask the school to publish it.

6. What means of transportation do you 7- A viog is similar to a blog. use?

8- How can people access websites?

g. He was working on a new story.

10- What dose Adam love to do?

11- Adam hand his notebook to his mom.

12- Do you want to read my new story?

13-We're learning how to type at school

14- How does Youssel's mam help him?

15- His mom was in the kitchen.

16-1 like to write stories and reports

17- Do you use any social media platforms?

# Unit (+0) Test (4) granuling

U Listen and circle the correct enswer:

1- devices 2- private 3- email 4- account

Read and complete the dialogue:

3- publish 2- touch type 1- story

# Read and answer the questions:

1- one person 2- website

4- A blog is a special kind of website. It usually belongs to one person '

5- A blog belongs to one person who posts information for others to read.

On a viog, people post videos they make, instead of written texts.

S Choose the correct answer:

1- should 2- but 3- speak 4- or 5- shouldn't

Order to make correct sentences:

1-What problems does air pollution cause?

2- You shouldn't write your story by hand,

3- How does Youssel's mom help him?

#### → Write an email:

From: hany@school.net To: ramy@hotmail.com

Subject: using social media

Dear Remy.

How are you? I want to fell you my opinion about using soci il media bought a new amartphone restorday It is so important for me if use it for calling my friends and my family There are different kinds of nocial media that I can use I can use Facebook to write my opinions and share photos. I

can also use WhatsApp for chatting. There are lots of good things on my phone. The only bad thing is that it wastes much of my time. See you soon.

Yours. Hany

# lim (10) lest (6) 使吃饱

U Listen and complete:

1- writer 2- four 3- stories 4- morning

#### Read and complete:

2- account 3- cyberfriends 1- sign up

#### Read then answer:

2- different 3- TV 1- watching TV

4- sports, computers, the internet drawing, reading and collecting stamps. There also watching TV and listening to radio

5- To know what is happening all over the

#### Choose the correct answer:

1- should 2- or 3- shouldn't 4- in 5- come

#### Order the words:

1- An after school dub is a perfect idea.

2- What problems does air pollution cause?

3- We use electronic devices to send messages

#### Write a text of (50) words:

The computer is an important invention. You can use it in many different fields. You can study your lessons, play games and get any Information you went. You can use the internet and sign up for a social media account. On the internet we can post videos and make cyberfriends. We can learn a lot about different cultures.

- Read and complete the text:
- 1- traffic 2- trip 3- Hohla
- Read and complete the text;
- 1- spaces 2- trees 3- recycle
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- gasoline 2- easier 3- street cars
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- bums 2- environment 3- electric
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- skiff 2- papyrus 3- fishing
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- electric 2- driverless 3- vehicles
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- bikes 2- advantage
- Read and complete the text:
- 1- transportation 2- wagons 3- boats
- 4- airplanes 5- roof 6- canal 7-water vapor 8- waterway 9-green spaces
- 10-trees 11-solar panels 12-bins
- 13- bike paths 14- residents
- 15- traffic jams 16- transportation
- 17- streetcar 18- ferry 19- subway 20- cab
- Read and complete the text;
- 1- by 2- on 2- by 4- on 5- by 6- on 7- to 8- in 9- than
- 10- oldest 11- faster 12- less difficult 13- the best
- 14- the most famous 15- worse 16- more
- 17- better than
- 18- smaller 19- worst 20- the least
- Order the words:
- Many crises have a big problem nowadays.
- 2- We have to sit in a traffic jam.
- 3- The traffic lights are often red.
- 4- I can't make the trip on foot.
- 5- We have good public transportation.
- 6- Are there a lot of traffic lights?
- 7- You must wear your seal belt.
- 8- Old you go to the science museum?
- 9- it's important to have green spaces.
- 10- We need more parks and trees.
- 11- What can residents do to help?
- 12- People volunteer to pick up garbage.

- 13- The invention of the steam engine changed transportation
- 14- My city is located on the Nile River.
- 15- There are palm trees around the houses.
- 16- Solar energy is better than fossil fuels.
- 17- The ferry can use the new canals.
- 16- This is more ecological transportation now
- 19- Hydrogen vehicles don't produce dangerous gases.

# 

- U Listen and circle the correct answer:
- 4- on foot 1- Jam 2- trip 3- W0158
- Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1- environment 2- spaces
- Read and answer the questions:
- 1- ecological 3- deaner 2- drivers
- 4- Warm air and water vapor
- 5- We can ide bikes all around the city on the bike paths
- Choose the correct answer:
- 1- larger 2- more 3- happiest
- 4- the least 5- by
- Order to make correct sentences;
- 1- What animals do people use for transportation?
- 2- The ferry can carry a lot of people
- 3- What can residents do to help?
- 7 Write a paragraph:

There are different forms of transportation in my city. I go to school by bus ( like it because I see my classmates every day My sister goes to school on foot because her school is next to our house. My mother goes to work by taxl My father goes to work in his car

# Unit (11) Test (5)

- Listen and circle:
  - 1- ferry
  - 2- ecological 3- residents 4- waterways
- Read and complete:
- 1- transportation 2- continent 3- rockets
- Read the following then answer:
- 1- mules 2- water
- 4- Walking, running and swimming. 3- Farmers
- 5- people used small wagons and carts.



Choose the correct:

1. the biggest 2- by 3- the cleverest

4- more 5- worse

Order the words:

1. Do you go to school on foot?

2- It's important to protect our waterways.

3- Which types of transport do you use?

7 Write an email:

From: kaream@school.com To: kamal@school.com

Subject: the land transportation

Dear kamal.

am happy to send you this email. I am writing to tell you about the land transportation new. There are electric cabs but they don't have any drivers because they are driverless if we use electric vehicles, the air will be cleaner. We also have hydrogen vehicles. They don't produce any dangerous gases. They only produce warm air and water vapor. That's all for now.

**Best wishes** Kareem

# Unit (12)

# Unit (12) Revision

Read and complete the text:

3- erosion 1- agriculture 2- change

Read and complete the text:

3- shortage 1- water 2- dry

Read and complete the text: 3- showers

1- shortage 2- reuse

Read and complete the dialogue: 3- course 1- order 2- appetizer

Read and complete the text:

3- flows 1- natural 2- rocks

O Choose the correct:

3- glacier 2- drought 1- erosion

6- landslide 4- atmosphere 5- flood

7- water shortage 8- tsunami

10- agreement 9- eco-friendly

7 Choose the correct:

2- won't go 3- come 4- visit 1- will help

6- will find 7- reuses 8- has 5- will

9- won't waste 10- will help 11- won't rain 12- will lose 13- is 14- and 15- but 16- or 17- so 18- and 19- so 20- but

🚻 Order the words:

1- Wind can cause to erode the land.

2- Erosion in a natural process.

3- Will you go shopping this afternoon?

4- Climate change affects our planet.

5- World leaders had an important meeting.

6- Countries agreed to start reducing greenhouse gases.

7- They decided to stop using coal.

8- We must all slow climate change.

# Unit (12) Test (6) ুলোল্যান্তরনা

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- slow 2- plans 3- recycle 4- Conference

Read and complete the text:

2- global 1- agreement

3- greenhouse gases

Read and answer the questions:

1- erode 2- climate change 3- process

4- When rock and soil is moved from one place to another by water, wind, or flows.

5- By heavy agriculture and burning fossil fuels.

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- so 2- will reduce 3- go 4- writes 5- but

Order to make correct sentences:

1- What did the leaders agree to do?

2- We need to slow down climate change.

3- Will you go shopping this afternoon?

Write a paragraph:

Global warming

Global warming is a very serious problem that the whole world faces. It's the rising of the temperature of Earth. This causes very dangerous problems like ice melting, forest fires, erosion, drought and food shortage. We should find a solution to this problem and we can do this by reducing the emission of carbon dioxide and the other bad gases into the atmosphere.

#### Unit (12) Test (6) منحق النقارة

U Listen and circle:

2- global warming 1- meeting

4- coal 3- document

Read and complete:

1-transportation 2 electric 3-Agreement

(ii) Read then answer:

1-four 2- windy

3- Winter

4- Fall Isn't too hot and it Isn't too cold.

5- On holidays, people don't go to work. They have rest and have fun. Some go to farms; some go to the beach and some stay at home.

Choose the correct;

1-don't burn

2- will travel

3-50

4- won't save

5- but

Order the words:

1- Car companies will make more electric vehicles.

2-Will they stop using fossil fuels?

3-What can we do to slow down erosion?

Write a text of (50) words:

Water is very important for all of us, not only for humans, but also for animals and plants. Farmers use water to water the plants to grow and we can eat them. Animals won't be alive without drinking water. If there is a water shortage, rivers and lakes will become dry. Farmers cannot grow food and nature will be in danger. So we should save water to help ourselves and help all the living things in our planet.

# Part

# Revision Tests

# Revision Test (1)

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- Nile River 2- solar 3- roofs 4- patr. trans

Read and complete:

2- danger 3- water shortage 1- Drought

Read then answer:

1- football 2- one station 3- newspaper

4- By train 5- On Monday morning

5 Choose the correct:

1- talking - 2- comes 3- were digging

4- healthler 5- but

Order the words:

1- Ships with steam engines could travel 2- Do you get to school on time?

3- How can people access websites?

7 Write a text of (50) words:

Last week, I went to the museum. went with my family. We went by car. We saw a lot of artifacts, statues and tools. We saw a long wooden box. It looked like an old senet game. I wondered who used to play with it. We took photos with a lot of tourists there. We had fun there and learned a lot of new things, too.

# Revision Test (2)

Listen and circle:

1- signals 2- electronic 3- email 4- account

Read and complete:

1- gasoline 2- environment 3-transportation

Read then answer:

1- time machine 2- dreams 3- asleep

4- To know what happened long ago or to find out what will happen.

5- They may be happy or frightening.

Choose the correct:

1- easily

2-eat

3- wins

4- should

5- was having

Order the words:

1-What do you use your account for?

2- You shouldn't write your story by hand. 3- How did you get to this island?



Write an email:

From: engy@school.com To: heb@hotmail.com

Subject: the means of communication

Dear Heba.

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about the means of communication today and in the past in the past, people used smoke signals or birds to send messages to each other. Today, we use technology like electronic devices to help us send messages. I can access websites from different electronic devices like smart phones, tablets, and laptops.

# Revision Test (3):

III Listen and circle:

1- Identity

2- agriculture

3- temples

4- calendars

Read and complete:

1- reports

2- interested 3- club

Read then answer:

1- helpful

2- easier

3- computer

3- It is very difficult one.

4- He helps them to use the different programs of computer, how to surf the Internet and he explains lessons to his student in a simple way.

5 Choose the correct:

1- or

2- more expensive

3- will win

4- help

5- wears

Order the words:

1- What environment do you live in?

Bread was important in ancient Egypt.

3- Trees are important in protecting our planet.

Write a text of (50) words:

Reading is very important. The book is the best friend to you. You should read a lot when you have free time. You can read different books. You can read books about the past or the future. You will find a lot of Information in books. You should read books anytime and anywhere.

# Revision Test (4)

Listen and circle:

1- Giza 2- traditions 3- visitors 4- food

Read and complete:

1- Agriculture

2- flood

3- seasons

Read then answer:

1- slower than

2- proud

To have a race

4- Because the rabbit slept and the tortoise arrived at the river first.

Choose the correct:

1- finding 2- drives 3- grew 4- so 5- faster

Order the words:

1- Burning fossil fuel results in climate change. 2- Do you go to school by car?

3- How does Grandma get her recipes?

Write an email:

From: nada@yahoo.com To: amal@school.net

Subject: my favorite meal

Dear Nada,

I am pleased to send you this email. How are you? I am writing to tell you about my favorite meal for lunch. It is Hawawshi. It is made with bread and beef or lamb. Meat is cooked with onion, herbs, and spices. The bread is pressed together around the meat and cooked. We sometimes eat it with salad. Hawawshi is a delicious dish. What's your favorite meal?

Best wishes, Nada

# Revision Test (5)

U Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- rain 2- hot 3- coastal 4- swamps

Read and complete:

1- traditional 2- meal 3- generous

Read then answer:

2- thousand 3- drink 1- coffee

3- In Ethlopia

4- Arab travelers

Choose the correct:

1- eat 2-but 3- more 4-was cleaning 5- has

Order the words:

1- What are fossil fuels made from?

2- The trip to school takes an hour.

3- We all must slow climate change.

# Write a text of (50) words:

Yesterday I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We went by bus. We saw different animals. I fed the birds. My brother fed the giraffe. My parents fed the monkeys. We had lunch there. We had pasta and meat balls. We drank orange juice. We took lovely photos. We were very happy.

# Revision Test (6)

Listen and circle the correct answer:

1- ecological

2- drivers

3- electric

4- hydrogen

Read and complete:

1- renewable 2- resources 3- pollution

Read then answer:

1- the North coast 2- bus 3- Egypt
3- Al Fayoum, Wadi El Rayan and famous temple. 4- They enjoyed the beach, the camel rides and the boat trips.

Choose the correct:

1-doing 2-use 3-visiting 4-on 5-more

Order the words:

1- The waves in the sea can erode beaches.

2- Can I get a social media account?

3- Are there a lot of traffic lights?

Write an email:

From: esraa@ school.net

To: mariam@gmail. net

Subject: energy Dear Mariam,

I miss you so much. I'm writing to tell you about energy. Fossil fuels are things like coal, gas and oil. They are non-renewable. When they run out, we can't find or make more of them.

find or make more of them. We can get renewable energy from natural resources such as the wind, the sun, water and heat inside the earth. They don't run out. I prefer to use solar energy from the sun to make clean electricity, that's all for now.

See you soon. Best wishes, Esraa,

# Revision Test (7)

U Listen and circle:

1- videos

2- one person

3- website

4- written texts

Read and complete:

1-mountainous 2-weather 3-survive

Read then answer:

1- bus 2- 200

3- father

4- The trip took one day.

5- The students saw different animals.

Choose the correct:

1- Did 2- but

3- better

4- will play 5- coming

Order the words:

1-The rural environment is sparsely populated. 2- What do you like to make?

3- Eid Al-Adha lasts for four days.

Write a text of (50) words:

Getting ready for the final exam makes me feel excited. I have to study harder. I revise all my last lessons. I don't waste my time at all. I don't watch TV. I enswer all the questions in my books. My mother always helps me to do my best in all the exams.



